AL ADWAA
Gem



الصف الخامس الابتدائى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Prepared by: Senior English Teachers



Contents







Scope and sequence

Theme 1: I discover myself

	Unit 1: We plant our food	Unit 2: I want to be healthy!	Unit 3: How do I look?
Vocabulary	▸ bananas, beans, cakes, candy, carrots, chocolate, coconuts, eggs, grapes, lemons, limes, mangoes, milk, onions, pineapples, rice, chickpeas, ingredients, legumes, seeds, rows, harvest, energy, producers, consumers, decomposers, primary, secondary, tertiary, castle, giant, grabbed, chopped, cage	▸ Activities: football, handball, karate, kung fu, sailing, swimming, squash, tennis ▸ Places and equipment: football, football boots, football pitch, karate suit, tennis court, swimming pool, squash rackets, swimming goggles toxic, air fresheners, emissions, acid, shade, greenhouses, nightmare	▸ T-shirt, sunglasses, swimming shorts, scarf, sweater, sneakers, necklace, pajamas, spotted stripes, robe, pockets, sleeves, pearl, man-made ▸ mountain, glacier, river, flood, rainforest, desert, waterfalls, fossils, erosion, sand dunes, fertile, river banks, canal, sculptures
Language	▸ Hello, what would you like? I'd like some carrots, please. Are there any beans? Yes, there are/No, there aren't. Making suggestions: ▸ How about buying some coconuts? ▸ Countable and uncountable foods with *a, an, some,* and *any*	▸ What are you good/great/bad at? I'm good at playing football, but I'm bad at sailing. What about you? ▸ I'm good at playing football because I can run fast. ▸ Review of comparatives (i.e., *worse than, better than*) superlatives	▸ Infinitive of purpose i.e., I wore a galabeya to stay cool, She went to town to buy a sweater. ▸ Past simple i.e., I went to my bedroom to go to sleep, Tarek went to the market to buy some oranges.
Reading	▸ Text about the production of chickpeas from the farm to the dinner table ▸ Text about a food chain ▸ Food diaries ▸ A fairy tale: *Jack and the Beanstalk* ▸ Reading a recipe for basbousa	▸ Text about environmental issues ▸ A sports biography about Hedaya Malak	▸ Text about the natural features of the Nile Delta, the Nile Valley, and the Fayoum Depression Text about how different natural features are formed through wind and soil erosion ▸ Text about traditional clothes and those for special festivals. ▸ A fairy tale: *The Elves and the Shoemaker* Blog about different school uniforms ▸ Text about traditional clothes worn in Mexico
Listening	▸ Dialog between two friends about healthy and unhealthy food, and food preferences ▸ Dialog at the market	▸ Dialog about sports results/sports equipment/sports news	▸ Packing for a holiday to AL Fayoum ▸ Listening and identifying clothes from a description
Speaking	▸ Roleplaying a dialog between customers and market sellers, discussion about food production, discussion about personal diet and how to make sensible food choices	▸ Discussing sports and leisure preferences, saying what I'm good or bad at, discussion about what we can do to protect the air, sea, and trees	▸ Discussing traditional clothes, talking about favorite clothes, and those for special festivals
Writing	▸ Write a recipe for a healthy meal giving ingredients and instructions	▸ Solutions for the protection of the air, seas, and trees. ▸ A sports biography of a famous Egyptian sportsperson	▸ A description of your favorite clothes using a range of adjectives about opinion, size, age, color, and material
Project	▸ Making a poster about the production and use of a locally-produced fruit, vegetable, or legume	▸ Research and give a presentation about how to help my local environment by offering solutions to current issues	▸ Research traditional clothes from a chosen country and write a leaflet
Phonics	▸ Identify and pronounce initial, medial, and final phonemes in spoken single-syllable words e.g., cake, lime, bean, grape, egg, milk, rice, candy. ▸ Identify spelling correspondences for additional common vowels, e.g., cake, rain, gray.	▸ Segment spoken single-syllable words into their complete sequence of individual sounds (phonemes). Distinguish between short and long vowel sounds. ▸ Identify the number of syllables in two-syllable words.	▸ Distinguish rules for simple past tense (i.e.,/d/, /t/, and / Id/)
Life skills	**Self-expression/ independence** ▸ Choose a recipe to write about Understanding and putting a process in order (chickpeas from farm to table) **Decision making:** ▸ Deciding which meals are healthy and living a healthy life	**Critical thinking:** ▸ Possible solutions about how to make local environments less polluted and more pleasant	**Respect for diversity:** Understanding how other people dress and their unique identity
Values	▸ **Showing respect for others**: Respecting differences and respecting people who help us by asking for things politely ▸ Giving constructive feedback to peers		**Mercy** Talking about why people help others Appreciating differences
Issues and challenges	▸ **Making sensible food choices** How to live a healthier life	▸ **Environmental responsibility:** What can we do to make our environment a better place to live?	▸ **Non-discrimination** Traditional clothing from around the world
Integrated cross-cultural topics	**Science:** ▸ Food chain Review of where our food comes from **Math:** Decimal fractions **Project:** Making a poster about the production and use of a locally produced fruit, vegetable, or legume	**Social studies:** Solutions to improve the local environment **Math:** Add and subtract decimals to thousandths; solve problems **Project:** Ideas to make local cities and communities less polluted and more pleasant	**Science:** How different natural features are formed through wind and soil erosion **Social studies and Geography:** The natural features of different regions in Egypt (Nile Delta, Nile Valley, Fayoum Depression) **Math:** Multiply multi-digit numbers **Culture:** Traditional clothes from Mexico **Project:** Research traditional clothes from a chosen country and write a leaflet

skills

Theme 2: Myself and others

	Unit 4: Looking after our world	Unit 5: Jobs we do	Unit 6: What's the weather like?
Vocabulary	▸ forest, island, lake, mountain, coral reefs, river, waterfall, rare, reign, sunsets, tombs, messy, weeds ▸ community, glad, hiking, eco-lodges, suitable, atmosphere, normal, livestock farming, greenhouse effect, blanket, dive, environment, hotels, wildlife, pollution, surprise	▸ crab, fish, insect, rocks, sand, seaweed, sunlight, tree, water dentist, teacher, vet, biologist, journalist, receptionist, pianist, scientist, scribe, craftsman, grains, doctor, trader, ecosystem, living, non-living, rockpool, souvenirs, skillful, hieroglyphs, dolphins, monkeys, coast, endangered, jackals, spices, reeds, welcoming, archaeologist, move, buzzing, relaxing, fence, carry on	▸ cloud, ice, rain, rainbow, snow, sun, wind, cloudy, sunny, windy, rainy, heat wave, sandstorm, strong winds/storm, tidal wave, shade, cry, knocked, nearby, nature, fruit, leather, silver, milk, copper, nuts, eggs, tin cans, wood, cotton, natural resources, mineral resources, fossil fuels, renew, lead, zinc, economies
Language	▸ Past Continuous i.e., We were walking in one of the Nubian villages this morning. ▸ What were you doing at (8am) yesterday? I was going to school.	▸ Present Simple third person singular endings i.e., She catches a bus, He flies a plane, It eats fruit. Must for things that we have to do, and mustn't for things we are not allowed to do i.e., I must do my homework, I mustn't walk on the grass.	▸ Frequency adverbs i.e., always, sometimes, usually, often, never. How often do you...? ▸ I often sit out on our balcony on hot nights. ▸ I'm always in bed by 11 pm.
Reading	▸ Text about the causes and results of climate change ▸ Text about the greenhouse effect ▸ Text about a community garden ▸ Text about an eco-resort in Taba	▸ Text about why ecosystems are important ▸ Texts about different jobs in tourism ▸ A fable: *The Ant and the Grasshopper* ▸ Text about working in a team.	▸ Text about the weather in Egypt ▸ Text about a heat wave ▸ Texts about extreme weather events
Listening	▸ My visit to Elephantine Island ▸ The positive and negative things about tourism	▸ Jobs in Ancient Egypt ▸ Why are ecosystems important? ▸ My trip to Nubia with a tour guide	▸ Weather in different Egyptian cities ▸ What are natural resources?
Speaking	▸ Discussing and identifying villages, cities, and towns in Egypt, and personal preferences ▸ Talking about what you were doing at specific times in the past ▸ Talking about the positive and negative aspects of eco-tourism ▸ Talking about the benefits of taking part in a community garden project	▸ Discussing different jobs ▸ Completing a survey about favorite jobs	▸ Discussion about favorite weather and season ▸ Discussion about what to do in a heat wave ▸ Talking about daily usage of natural resources
Writing	▸ Research and write a flyer about eco-tourism	▸ Write short description of three jobs Write about some facts and other information for tourists in Nubia ▸ Pros and cons of certain jobs – a job you want and a job you don't want	▸ Writing a list of ideas to help save water resources ▸ Writing an account of an extreme weather event ▸ Writing tips about keeping safe in extreme weather
Project	▸ Researching and creating a flyer about an eco-destination ▸ Working collaboratively	▸ A poster about teamwork	▸ Make a leaflet about keeping safe in extreme weather
Phonics	▸ Recognize and pronounce three consonant clusters in initial position i.e., scr-, str-, and thr- ▸ Recognize and read grade-appropriate regularly spelled words	▸ Read and correctly pronounce diphthongs /aʊ/, /aɪ/, and /ɔɪ/ ▸ The suffix -ist for jobs i.e., dentist, biologist	▸ Differentiating between /p/ and /b/ i.e., bull and pull, bear and pear ▸ Identifying silent letters i.e., climb, two, hour, island, knife, write
Life skills	▸ **Critical thinking:** Identifying cause and result in the natural world ▸ Identifying benefits of helping in your community	▸ **Problem solving:** What we need to survive ▸ **Collaboration:** Make a poster about teamwork and how to work effectively in a team ▸ How to work out a solution when you disagree with someone	▸ **Accountability** Behaving responsibly in emergencies
Values	▸ **Tolerance** Helping people at the community	▸ **Independence** What you can do now to help you in the future.	▸ **Independence** Looking after our world ▸ How can we save water?
Issues and challenges	▸ **Citizenship** Helping my community	▸ **Globalization** How tourism helps our community	▸ **Sustainable development** Balancing natural resources and economic developments
Integrated cross-cultural topics	▸ **Science:** Greenhouse gases and climate change ▸ **Social sciences:** Helping my community ▸ **Math:** Number sequences ▸ **Project:** Researching and creating a flyer about an eco-destination Working collaboratively	▸ **Science:** Different kinds of ecosystems, living and non-living things ▸ **Math:** Pie charts ▸ **Project:** A poster about teamwork	▸ **Science:** Natural resources and their importance for the economy ▸ **Math:** Units of measurement ▸ **Project:** A leaflet about keeping safe in extreme weather

General Revision



Food and drink

chicken	دجاج	grapes	عنب	onions	بصل
rice	أرز	potatoes	بطاطس	bananas	موز
mangoes	مانجو	sugarcane	قصب السكر	watermelon	بطيخ
cookies	كوكيز (بسكويت بالشيكولاتة)	chocolate	شيكولاتة	cake	كيك
cheese	جبن	pizza	بيتزا	meat	لحم
kahk	كحك	salted fish	سمك مملح	salad	سلطة
ful medames	فول مدمس	basbousa	بسبوسة	milk	لبن
juice	عصير	water	مياه	cola	كولا

Parts of the body/Organs

mouth	الفم	esophagus	المريء	stomach	المعدة
small intestine	الأمعاء الدقيقة	large intestine	الأمعاء الغليظة	nose	الأنف
lungs	الرئتان	diaphragm	الحجاب الحاجز		

Animals

snake	ثعبان	camel	جمل	fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك
eagle	نسر	crocodile	تمساح	spider	عنكبوت
pelican	بجعة	hippo	فرس النهر	horse	حصان
elephant	فيل	bear	دب	gazelle	غزالة
giraffe	زرافة				

Body parts of animals

fur	فرو	feathers	ريش	wing	جناح
beak	منقار				

Parts of the plants

soil	تربة	seeds	بذور	root	جذر
flower	زهرة	leaf	ورقة شجر	shoot	نبتة

Parts of the house

balcony	بلكونة	dining room	غرفة الطعام	kitchen	مطبخ
bedroom	غرفة النوم	bathroom	حمام	living room	غرفة المعيشة

Different houses

cave	كهف	apartment	شقة	houseboat	منزل عائم

Places

school	مدرسة	supermarket	سوبر ماركت	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
post office	مكتب بريد	hospital	مستشفى	tent	خيمة
house	منزل	building	مبنى		

Jobs

electrician	كهربائي	plumber	سباك	mail carrier	ساعي بريد	mechanic	ميكانيكي
builder	عامل بناء	garbage collector	عامل نظافة	bus driver	سائق أتوبيس	teacher	مدرس
librarian	أمين مكتبة	fisherman	صياد	farmer	مزارع	engineer	مهندس
geologist	جيولوجي	guide	مرشد	cook	طباخ	cleaner	عامل نظافة
dentist	طبيب أسنان						

Industries

education	التعليم	fishing	الصيد	farming	الزراعة
energy	الطاقة	mining	التعدين	tourism	السياحة

Nature

river	نهر	forest	غابة	desert	صحراء
oasis	واحة	mountain	جبل		

Party games

hide and seek	لعبة الغميضة	pass the parcel	لعبة نقل الطرود	musical chairs	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية

Party actions/Activities

play games	يلعب الألعاب	play music	يشغل الموسيقى	give presents	يعطى الهدايا
wrap presents	يلف الهدايا	open presents	يفتح الهدايا		

Social media

log into	يقوم بتسجيل الدخول	message	يراسل/رسالة	chat	يحادث /محادثة
do research	يجرى بحثًا	password	كلمة المرور		

Means of transportation

metro	مترو الأنفاق	bus	أتوبيس	boat	قارب	plane	طائرة
ship	سفينة	train	قطار	car	سيارة	truck	شاحنة

Environmental problems

traffic	الازدحام المرورى	pollution	التلوث	flood	الفيضان
drought	الجفاف	fire	الحريق	trash	القمامة



The Present Simple Tense

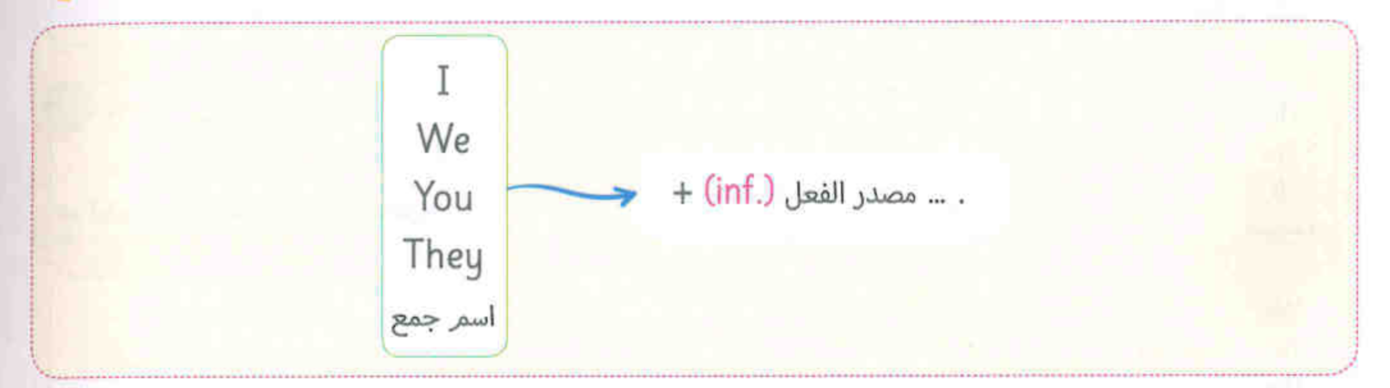
زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage: We use the present simple to express habits or daily routine, repeated actions, and general truth.

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات، والأفعال المتكررة، والحقائق العامة.

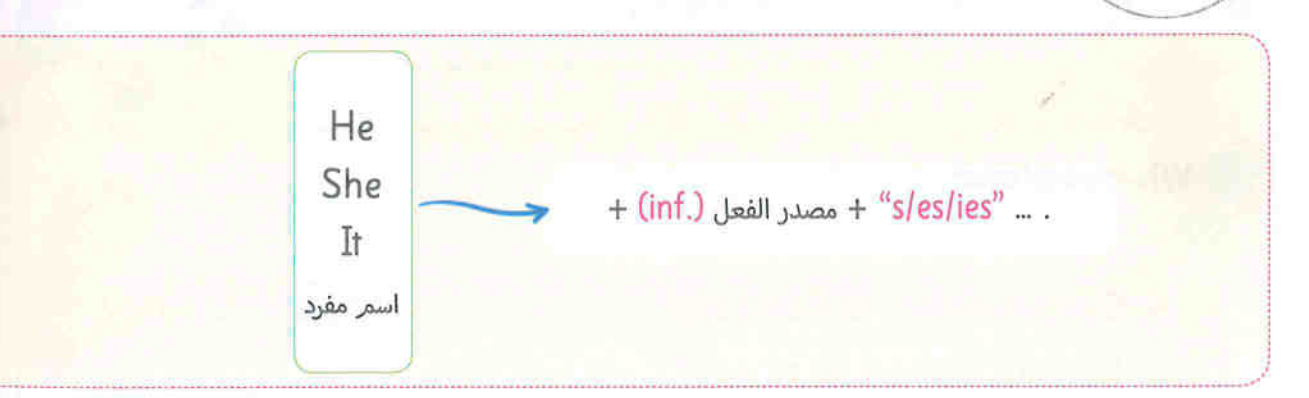


Form:



e.g. I **eat** lunch at two o'clock.


أنا آكل الغداء فى الساعة الثانية.



e.g. He **goes** to the hospital at five thirty.

هو يذهب إلى المستشفى فى الساعة الخامسة والنصف.



لاحظ: إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (sh / ch / s / ss / o / x) مع الفاعل المفرد يضاف إليه es.



e.g. go - goes

The Present Continuous Tense

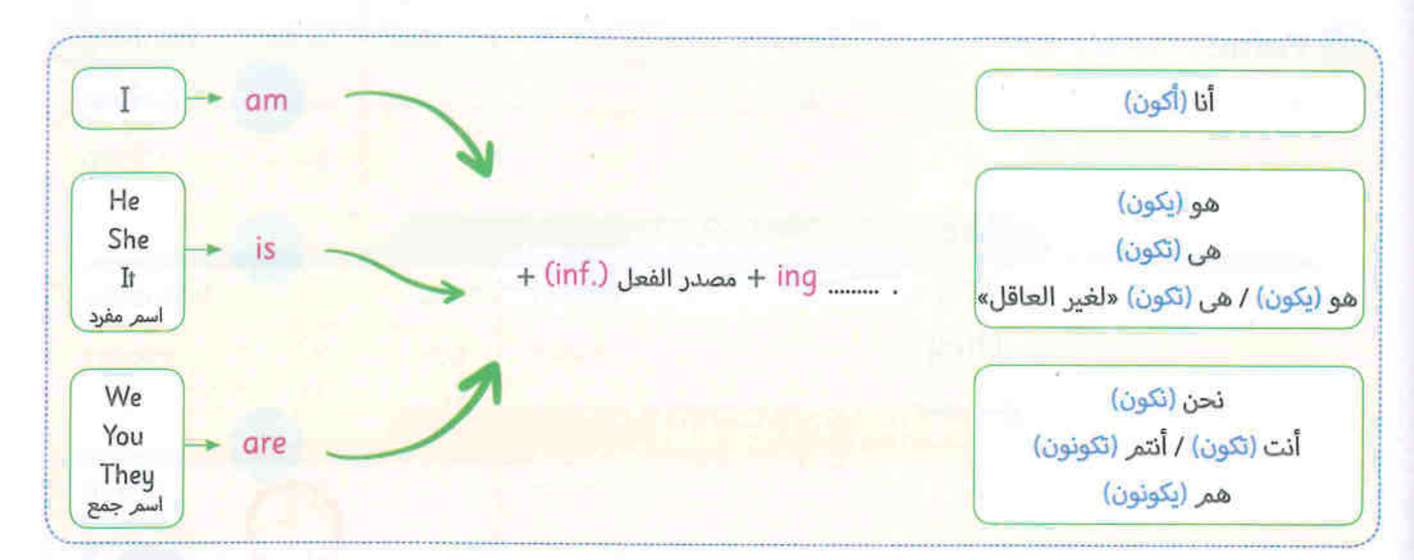
زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage: We use the present continuous tense to express actions that are happening at the moment of speaking.

يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الأفعال التى تحدث فى وقت الكلام.



Form:





e.g. I'm playing football. أنا ألعب كرة القدم.





Wh-questions:

A: Question word + (is / am / are) + subj. (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ...?

B: Subject (الفاعل) + v. to be + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ... .



e.g.



What are you doing? ماذا تفعل؟



I am watching TV. أنا أشاهد التلفاز.

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage: We use the past simple tense to express actions that started and ended in the past.

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التى بدأت وانتهت فى الماضى.



Form: (Regular verbs):

Subject + verb + (d / ed / ied) ....

e.g. Ahmed traveled to Cairo last month.



Irregular verbs:

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل .

e.g.

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	take	يأخذ	took
see	يرى	saw	make	يصنع	made

e.g. Hana made a cake yesterday.



Yes/No questions:

A: Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) .... ?

B: Yes, subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل. OR B: No, subject (الفاعل) + didn't.

e.g.



Did he like the toy?

Yes, he liked the toy.



Wh-questions:

A: Question word + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) + yesterday?

B: Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل.

e.g.



What did you do yesterday?

We went to the zoo.





Punctuation marks



Capital letters الحروف الكبيرة

فى بداية الجملة (الخبرية/ الأمرية)/ السؤال / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / الضمير (I) فى أى مكان بالجملة / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة.

e.g.
1. Ahmed is from Egypt.
2. I am Egyptian and I speak Arabic.
3. Today is Monday.
4. I visited the Egyptian Museum in August.



Period النقطة

فى نهاية الجملة.

e.g. I eat breakfast every day.



Question mark علامة الاستفهام

فى نهاية السؤال.

e.g. What are you doing?



Exclamation mark علامة التعجب

نضع علامة التعجب (!) فى نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التى تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب أو الشعور القوى.

e.g. Hi! / Wow! / I feel excited!



Apostrophe الفاصلة العليا

توضع قبل «s» الملكية. توضع فى الاختصارات.

e.g. 1. Kareem's bag is blue. 2. I'm a girl.



Comma الفاصلة السفلى

تستخدم الفاصلة عندما نكتب قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

e.g. 1. I like football, tennis, and basketball.

2. Yes, of course. تستخدم بعد Yes / No فى الإجابات.

3. I like playing sports, but I don't like reading books. تستخدم قبل but.

4. Can I have some tea, please? تستخدم قبل Please إذا جاءت فى نهاية الجملة.



THEME 1 I discover myself

أنا أكتشف نفسى









Parents' tips:

In theme one "I discover myself", students learn more about the food and drinks they eat and the importance of keeping a healthy diet. They learn more about sports and how to keep healthy and how to stay away from pollution. They learn also about clothing and how people dress differently at different places of the world.

فى المحور الأول «أنا أكتشف نفسى» يتعلم التلاميذ أكثر عن الطعام والشراب الذى يتناولونه، وأهمية المحافظة على نظام غذائى صحى. يتعلمون أيضًا عن الرياضة، وكيفية الحفاظ على أنفسهم بصحة جيدة، وكيف يتجنبون التلوث. يتعلمون أيضًا عن الملابس، وكيف يرتدى الناس ملابس مختلفة فى أماكن مختلفة فى العالم.

Unit 1

We plant our food
نحن نزرع طعامنا



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about different types of food.
  - understand food chains.
  - listen to a conversation about favorite food.
  - practice making suggestions with "**how about**".
  - understand a story.
  - learn how to say vowel sounds.
  - understand decimal fractions.
  - write a recipe.
  - research and make a poster about fruit and vegetables that grow in Egypt.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الطعام.
  - يفهم سلاسل الغذاء.
  - يستمع إلى محادثة عن الطعام المفضل.
  - يتدرب على تقديم الاقتراحات باستخدام "how about"
  - يفهم قصة.
  - يتعلم كيف ينطق الحروف المتحركة.
  - يفهم الكسور العشرية.
  - يكتب وصفة.
  - يبحث ويصمم ملصقًا عن الفاكهة والخضراوات التى تنمو فى مصر.

Life skills

Self-expression/ independence.
- choose a recipe to write about.
- understanding and putting a process in order (chickpeas from farm to table).

- التعبير عن الذات / الاستقلالية.
- اختيار وصفة للكتابة عنها.
- فهم عملية وترتيبها (الحمص من المزرعة إلى المائدة).

Decision making:
- deciding which meals are healthy and living a healthy life.

- صناعة القرار:
- تحديد الوجبات الصحية والعيش حياة صحية.

Values

Showing respect for others
- respecting differences and respecting people who help us by asking for things politely.
- gving constructive feedback to peers.

- إظهار الاحترام للآخرين
- احترام الاختلافات واحترام الأشخاص الذين يساعدوننا من خلال طلب الأشياء بأدب.
- إعطاء ملاحظات بناءة للأقران.

Warm up

Unit one is about the different types of food and where these foods come from. It also tells about the importance of eating healthily and making sensible food choices. It trains students in writing recipes for their favorite dishes as well.

Did you know?

Pineapples are heavy fruits that do not grow on trees. They grow on the ground.



I can find it out!

Plants grow in different ways. Apples, for example, grow on trees and start producing after 4-8 years of being planted. Strawberries, on the other hand, grow on veins. These veins are called runners. While Berries grow in bushes.



الترجمة:
- تتحدث الوحدة الأولى عن أنواع الأطعمة المختلفة ومن أين تأتى هذه الأطعمة. كما تتحدث عن أهمية تناول الطعام الصحى واتخاذ خيارات غذائية معقولة. كما تقوم بتدريب الطلاب على كتابة وصفات أطباقهم المفضلة.
- الأناناس فاكهة ثقيلة فهى لا تنمو على الأشجار. هى تنمو فى الأرض.
- تنمو النباتات بطرق مختلفة. التفاح على سبيل المثال ينمو على الأشجار وتبدأ الشجرة فى الإنتاج بعد ٤ إلى ٨ سنوات من بداية زرعها. على الجانب الآخر الفراولة تنمو على العروق وتسمى هذه العروق بالسيقان، فى حين أن التوت ينمو فى شجيرات.



STUDY

Lesson 1

Food and Drink



Main vocabulary



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Food and Drink
الطعام والشراب


beans
فول


eggs
بيض


carrots
جزر


chocolate
شيكولاتة




coconuts
جوز الهند


lemons
ليمون


limes
ليمون حامض

onions
بصل


pineapples
أناناس


chicken
دجاجة



- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ch) ينطقان /ʧ/ (تش) كما فى (chicken,chocolate) .
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) أحيانًا ينطق /z/ كما فى (eggs) .

Extra vocabulary

favorite (adj.)	مفضل	easy (adj.)	سهل
healthy (adj.)	صحى	little (adj.)	قليل
unhealthy (adj.)	غير صحى	a lot	الكثير من
fish	سمك	mangoes	مانجو
garden	حديقة	potatoes	بطاطس
fresh eggs	بيض طازج	market	سوق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة			
Present		Past	Present		Past
love	يحب	loved	like	يحب	liked
collect	يجمع	collected			
Irregular verbs		**أفعال غير منتظمة**			
Present		Past	Present		Past
eat	يأكل	ate	have	يمتلك/ يتناول	had
grow	يزرع	grew	sell	يبيع	sold
buy	يشترى	bought			

Expressions and Phrases

That's easy!	هذا أمر سهل!	It's OK.	لا بأس.

Check point

Unscramble and write: أعد الترتيب واكتب:

1 
ccolathoe ....

2 
conutcos ....

3 
eabns ....

Parents' tips
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Dina: What's your favorite food, Farida?
ما هو طعامك المفضل يا فريدة؟



Farida: That's easy! It's chocolate. هذا أمر سهل! إنها الشيكولاتة.



Dina: Mmm... I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it?
مم.. أنا أحب الشيكولاتة أيضًا. ولكنها ليست صحية، أليس كذلك؟

Farida: I think it's OK to eat a little. But yes, it is unhealthy if you eat a lot. أعتقد أنه لا مانع من تناول القليل. ولكن بلى، إنها غير صحية إذا تناولت منها الكثير.

Dina: What's your favorite healthy food?
ما هو طعامك الصحي المفضل؟



Farida: Oh, I like chicken and I like fish. But my favorite is mango. We have a mango tree in the garden.
أوه، أنا أحب الدجاج والسمك. ولكن طعامي المفضل هو المانجو. لدينا شجرة مانجو في الحديقة.





Dina: I love mango too. We don't have a mango tree. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree.
أنا أحب المانجو أيضًا. ليس لدينا شجرة مانجو. لدينا شجرة ليمون وشجرة ليمون حامض.





Farida: My uncle grows onions and potatoes. He has chickens too. He collects fresh eggs every day. Sometimes he sells them at the market.
عمي يزرع البصل والبطاطس. ولديه دجاج أيضًا. يقوم عمي بجمع البيض الطازج يوميًا. وأحيانًا يقوم ببيعه في السوق.

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.
ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

Language Functions

1 Asking about favorites: السؤال عن الأشياء المفضلة:

What's your favorite + noun (اسم) ?

e.g. A: What's your favorite food?
B: It's chocolate.

2 Expressing likes: التعبير عن الأشياء المفضلة:

I like/love + noun (اسم).

e.g. - I like chicken. - I love mango.

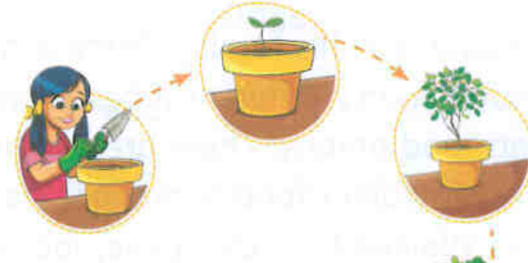
3 Expressing opinions: التعبير عن الآراء:

I think + ...

e.g. - I think it's OK to eat a little of chocolate.

Look, follow, and notice: انظر، تتبع ولاحظ:

Lemon tree growth cycle





Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 A: What's your (easy – favorite – ready) food? B: It's rice.
2 I (likes – like – liking) pineapples, but my favorite is mango.
3 I (think – like – buy) it's ok to eat a little of chocolate.



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and supply the missing letters : استمع وأكمل الحروف الناقصة: 4









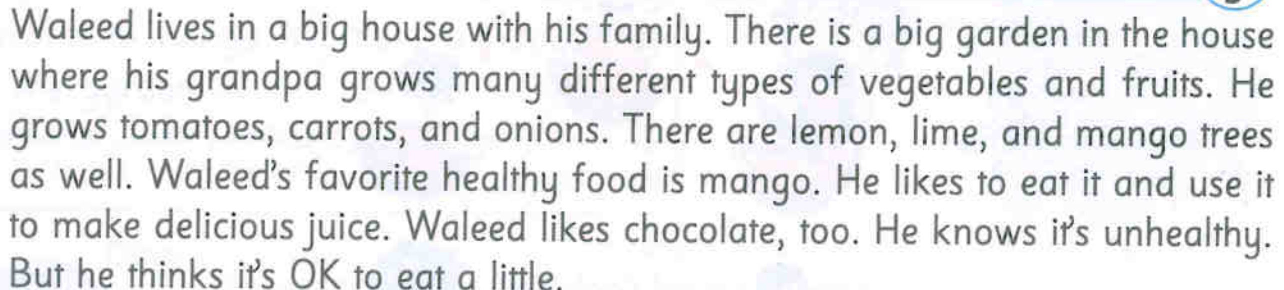
1 pin_app_es 2 c_con_ts 3 c_rro_s 4 le_o_s

2 Circle the odd word out: ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة: 4



1. favorite – delicious – sell – healthy
2. carrots – onions – limes – chocolate
3. coconut – grow – sell – collect
4. Farida – Nada – pineapples – Heba

3 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: 5



Waleed lives in a big house with his family. There is a big garden in the house where his grandpa grows many different types of vegetables and fruits. He grows tomatoes, carrots, and onions. There are lemon, lime, and mango trees as well. Waleed's favorite healthy food is mango. He likes to eat it and use it to make delicious juice. Waleed likes chocolate, too. He knows it's unhealthy. But he thinks it's OK to eat a little.

A Choose the correct word:

1. Waleed lives in a (house – farm – garden) with his family.
2. There are lemon and (carrot – lime – chocolate) trees in the garden.
3. Waleed likes (onions – chocolate – lemon), but he knows it isn't healthy.

B Answer the following questions:

4. Where does Waleed's grandpa grow the vegetables and fruits?
....
5. What's Waleed's favorite healthy food?
....

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child listen and complete.
(2) Help your child circle the odd word out.
(3) Help your child read the passage and answer.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب.



TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 1



Listening 12

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

eat – favorite – unhealthy – chocolate

Farida : What's your.............................. food, Nada?
Nada : Oh! That's easy. It's ....
Farida : I like chocolate too, but I think it's .... , isn't it?
Nada : Yes, but it's OK if you .... a little.



2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4



1. A: What's your favorite (animal – food – subject)? B: I like chicken.
2. Chocolate isn't a healthy food, but it's OK if you eat (a lot – much – a little).
3. Potatoes and (mangoes – chocolate – onions) are vegetables.
4. My uncle (collects – buys – grows) eggs every day and sells them in the market.



3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4



1. food – What's – healthy – favorite – your?
....
2. isn't – I – chocolate – think – healthy.
....
3. have – We – lemon – in the – trees – garden.
....
4. eggs – at – sells – My – the market – uncle.
....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!




STUDY

Lesson 2
Science



A From farm to fork

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

fork	شوكة	chickpeas	حمص	ingredients	مكونات
legumes	البقوليات	digestive system	الجهاز الهضمى	seeds	بذور

Extra vocabulary

important (adj.)	هام	recipes	وصفات	koshari	كشرى
hummus	حمص	vegetables	خضراوات	lentils	حبوب العدس
peanuts	فول سودانى	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	rows	صفوف
regularly	بانتظام	meals	وجبات		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعـــال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
help يساعد	helped	belong ينتمى إلى	belonged
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	harvest يحصد	harvested
Irregular verbs		**أفعال غير منتظمة**	
Present	Past	Present	Past
grow يزرع	grew	keep يحافظ على	kept
eat يأكل	ate	put يضع	put

Expressions and Phrases

working properly	يعمل بشكل صحيح
(be) called	يُسمى/ يُدعى

Parents' tips
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة وعلى أن يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Ashraf grows chickpeas [1]. Chickpeas are an important ingredient [2] in many recipes such as koshari and hummus. Chickpeas aren't a fruit or a vegetable. They belong to a group of foods called legumes [3]. Other legumes are lentils, and peanuts. Chickpeas are a healthy food. They can help to keep your digestive system[4] working properly.
The chickpeas that you eat are the seeds [5] of the chickpea plant.

(1) حمص
(2) مكون
(3) بقوليات
(4) الجهاز الهضمى
(5) بذور

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

	True	False
1 Chickpeas are an important ingredient in many meals.	( )	( )
2 Chickpeas belong to a group of food called dairy products.	( )	( )
3 Chickpeas help your digestive system work properly.	( )	( )

Parents' tips
Help your child read the passage correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.
الترجمة: يزرع أشرف الحمص. الحمص مكون رئيسى فى العديد من الوصفات كالكشرى ووجبات الحمص. الحمص ليس من الفواكه أو الخضراوات ولكنه ينتمى إلى مجموعة البقوليات. توجد أنواع أخرى من البقوليات مثل العدس والفول السودانى. الحمص من الأكلات الصحية التى تحافظ على عمل الجهاز الهضمى بطريقة سليمة. الحمص الذى تأكله عبارة عن بذور لنبات الحمص.

This is how you grow chickpeas and make them into delicious meals.



1 Plant chickpeas in rows. Water them regularly.

ازرع الحمص فى صفوف. اسقها بانتظام.



2 Check the chickpea plants. They should look green and healthy.

افحص نباتات الحمص. يجب أن تبدو خضراء وصحية.



3 After a while, the chickpeas will turn brown. This is when you harvest them and collect the seeds.

بعد فترة قصيرة، يتحول نبات الحمص إلى اللون البنى. حينها تقوم بحصاده وجمع بذوره.



4 Put the seeds into bags and take them to the market.

ضع البذور فى حقائب وخذها إلى السوق.



5 Marwa buys some chickpeas and other ingredients at the market to make a delicious meal.

تقوم مروة بشراء الحمص والمكونات الأخرى من السوق لعمل وجبة لذيذة.



6 Marwa puts the chickpeas in koshari and enjoys it with her family.

تضع مروة الحمص فى الكشرى وتستمتع بالوجبة مع عائلتها.

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	Chickpeas don't need water to grow.	( )	( )
2	Chickpeas should look green and healthy.	( )	( )
3	You can harvest chickpeas when they are green.	( )	( )

Parents' tips
Help your child identify the pictures and read the passages correctly to recognize the process of growing chickpeas.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الصور ويقرأ الفقرات بطريقة صحيحة ليتعرف على عملية زراعة نبات الحمص.



B Food chain السلسلة الغذائية

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary











caterpillar يرقة | beetle خنفساء | lizard سحلية | snake ثعبان | eagle نسر









fox ثعلب | fungi فطر | wheat قمح | date palm نخلة

Extra vocabulary

food chain	سلسلة غذائية	consumers	كائنات مستهلكة
producers	كائنات منتجة	primary consumers	مستهلكات أولية
secondary consumers	مستهلكات ثانوية	tertiary consumers	مستهلكات عليا
larger (adj.)	الأكبر حجمًا	called (adj.)	يُدعى / يُسمى
decomposers	كائنات محللة	ecosystem	النظام البيئى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present			Past
provide		يُمد/يُزود	provided
Irregular verbs		**أفعال غير منتظمة**	
Present	Past	Present	Past
show يوضح	showed	get يحصل على	got

Parents' tips
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

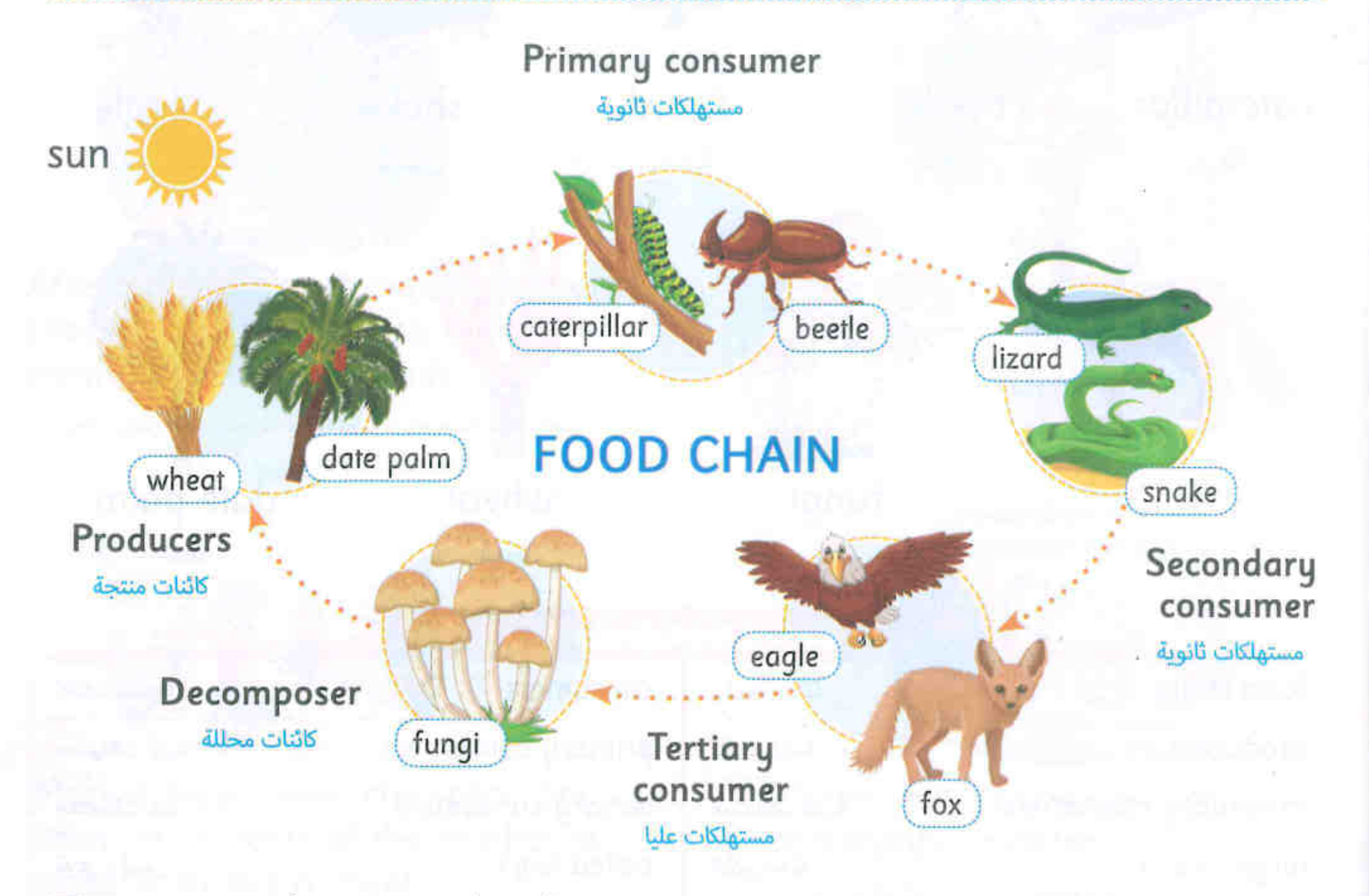


Food chain سلسلة غذائية

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

This is called a "food chain". It shows how plants and animals get their energy. At the start of the chain, we can see plants. These are called producers. They get energy from the sun. Animals do not get their energy from the sun. Animals eat plants or other animals for energy.





- The sun provides energy for plants to grow. تمد الشمس الطاقة للنباتات لتنمو.
- Plants and trees are called producers. النباتات والأشجار تسمى كائنات منتجة.
- Animals are called consumers. الحيوانات تسمى كائنات مستهلكة.
- Primary consumers eat plants. المستهلكات الأولية تأكل النباتات.
- Secondary consumers eat small animals and insects. المستهلكات الثانوية تأكل الحيوانات الصغيرة والحشرات.
- Tertiary consumers eat larger animals. المستهلكات العليا تأكل الحيوانات الأكبر حجمًا.
- Decomposers give nutrients back to the ecosystem. الكائنات المحللة تعيد المغذيات إلى النظام البيئي.

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the pictures and read the passage correctly to recognize the food chain.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الصور ويقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة ليتعرف على مفهوم السلسلة الغذائية.

- هذه تسمى السلسلة الغذائية. إنها توضح كيف تحصل الحيوانات والنباتات على طاقتها. يمكننا رؤية النباتات فى بداية السلسلة الغذائية. تسمى النباتات «كائنات منتجة» وتحصل على طاقتها من الشمس. أما الحيوانات فلا تحصل على طاقتها من الشمس. تقوم الحيوانات بأكل النباتات أو الحيوانات الأخرى لتحصل على طاقتها.



PRACTICE Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Tick (True) or (False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ): 4



	True	False
1 Chickpeas are Egyptian traditional fruits.	( )	( )
2 Chickpeas help your digestive system work properly.	( )	( )
3 The food chain shows how animals and plants get energy.	( )	( )
4 Primary consumers eat larger animals.	( )	( )



2 Read and re-order: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب: 4

- ( ) Check the chickpeas. They should look green and healthy.
- ( ) Plant chickpea seeds in rows and water them regularly.
- ( ) Put chickpeas in bags and you can sell them at the market.
- ( ) After a while, the chickpeas will turn brown. You can harvest them.

3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4



1 look – Chickpeas – should – healthy – green – and.

....

2 harvest – When – we – can – chickpea – the?

....

3 and – Snakes – are – consumers – lizards – secondary.

....

4 eat – larger – Tertiary – animals – consumers.

....

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child tick (true or false). ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ).
(2) Help your child read and re-order the process for planting the chickpeas. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويعيد ترتيب عملية زراعة الحمص.
(3) Help your child re-arrange to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 2





13

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

producers – chain – energy – plants

Habiba: What does the food .... show, Huda?
Huda : It shows how plants and animals get their ....
Habiba: How do .... get their energy?
Huda : Plants are .... They get their energy from the sun.



2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4



1. Chickpeas belong to a food group called (fruits – vegetables – legumes).
2. You can (grow – harvest – plant) chickpeas seeds when they turn brown.
3. Food (circle – chain – triangle) shows how plants and animals get their energy.
4. (wheat – Caterpillar – Fox) is a primary consumers.



3 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5



"Food chain"

energy – producers – sun – primary consumers

....
....
....
....
....





Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



STUDY



Lesson 3





A My Shopping List





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

shopping	تسوق	list	قائمة	pound	جنيه
mahalabia	مهلبية	market	سوق	koshari	كشرى

Extra vocabulary

trader	تاجر	lovely (adj.)	رائع	price	ثمن
juicy (adj.)	كثير العصارة	lucky (adj.)	محظوظ	fridge	ثلاجة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
need يحتاج	needed	visit يزور	visited
Irregular verbs		**أفعال غير منتظمة**	
Present	Past	Present	Past
think يعتقد	thought	come يأتى	came
get يحصل على	got	say يقول	said

Expressions and Phrases

There you go.	تفضل	in total	كليًا (إجماليًا)
here are	ها هو	over there	هناك

Parents' tips
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

1

Market trader: Lovely tomatoes! Come and buy! How about buying some lovely red tomatoes?

طماطم رائعة! تعال واشترِ! ماذا عن شراء بعض الطماطم الحمراء الجميلة؟

Mom: Oh, I think we need some tomatoes. How much are they?

أوه، أعتقد أننا بحاجة إلى بعض الطماطم. كم سعرها؟

Market trader: They're a good price: they're only three pounds for one kilogram.

إنها بسعر جيد؛ ثمنها ٣ جنيهات للكيلوجرام الواحد.

Mom: OK. We'll have a kilogram, please. حسنًا. سوف آخذ كيلو جرامًا واحدًا، من فضلك.

Market trader: How about buying some carrots too? ماذا عن شراء بعض الجزر أيضًا؟

Mom: No, thank you. لا، شكرًا.

Ibrahim: Mom, please can we have a pineapple? أمي، هل يمكن أن نحصل على أناناس من فضلك؟

Mom: Hmm, yes, Ibrahim! Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple.

نعم، إبراهيم! لنشترِ ثمرة أناناس غنية بالعصير.

Market trader: There you go. That'll be 20 pounds in total, please.

تفضلي. سيكون إجمالي الحساب ٢٠ جنيهًا، من فضلك.

2

Nada: I really like coming to your house, Grandma.

أحب حقًّا القدوم إلى منزلك يا جدتي.

Grandma: I like it when you visit me, Nada. يعجبني عندما تزورني ندى.

Nada: We haven't got a mango tree in our garden at home. We've got a lemon tree.

ليس لدينا شجرة مانجو في حديقتنا في المنزل. لدينا شجرة ليمون.

Grandma: I know. I'm lucky to have one. Would you like to have a mango now?

أعرف. أنا محظوظة لامتلاك واحدة. هل ترغب في الحصول على مانجو الآن؟

Nada: Yes, please! I would also like to have your mango and coconut mahalabia later. Have you got any coconut?

نعم من فضلك! أود أيضًا أن أحصل على مهلبية المانجو وجوز الهند لاحقًا. هل لديك أي جوز هند؟

Grandma: Yes, I bought some in the market this morning.

نعم، اشتريت بعضًا من السوق هذا الصباح.



3

Mom: Ashraf, will you come to the market with me?

أشرف، هل تأتي معي إلى السوق؟

Ashraf: Yes, of course. What do we need to buy?

نعم طبعًا. ماذا نحتاج أن نشتري؟

Mom: We need to buy bread and rice. What would you like for lunch on Saturday? Uncle Faisal is coming.

نحن بحاجة لشراء الخبز والأرز. ماذا تريد على الغداء يوم السبت؟ العم فيصل قادم.

Ashraf: Oh, I would like koshari, please. It's my favorite! أوه، الكشري من فضلك. إنه المفضل لدي!

Mom: OK, are there any onions in the fridge? حسنًا، هل هناك أي بصل في الثلاجة؟

Ashraf: No, there aren't. So, we need to buy bread, rice, and onions.

لا ، لا يوجد. لذلك نحن بحاجة لشراء الخبز والأرز والبصل.

4

Dad: OK, what do we need to get, Amal?

حسنًا، ما الذي نحتاجه يا آمال؟

Amal: Mom says three lemons and some eggs.

أمي تقول ثلاث حبات ليمون وبعض البيض.

Dad: Here are the lemons. ها هو الليمون.

Amal: The eggs are over there. Oh, and chocolate too!

البيض هناك. أوه، والشوكولاتة أيضًا!

Dad: Is it on Mom's list? هل هي في قائمة الأم؟

Amal: No, it isn't. But can I have some, please?

لا ، ليس كذلك. ولكن هل يمكنني الحصول على البعض من فضلك؟

Dad: OK, but don't eat it until after dinner, Amal.

حسنًا، لكن لا تتناوليها إلا بعد العشاء يا آمال.

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the dialogs using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play them with his/her classmates.



ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثات باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

Language Functions

1 Asking about price: السؤال عن السعر:

A: How much ....?
B: They're .... pounds.

e.g. A: How much are the tomatoes?
B: They're only six pounds for one kilogram.

2 Making suggestions: تقديم الاقتراحات:

A: How about + (inf. + ing) ....?
B: I think it's a good idea. / No, thank you.

e.g. A: How about buying some more carrots?
B: No, thank you.

3 Making offers: تقديم عروض:

A: Would you like ....?
B: Yes, please! / No, thank you.

e.g. A: Would you like to have a mango now?
B: Yes, please!

Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 A: How (many – much – old) are the mangoes? B: They're 20 pounds.
2 A: How about (buy – buying – bought) some more pineapples? B: Yes, sure.
3 A: (Would – What – Is) you like some juice? B: No, thank you.



Language Focus



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشِرْ وقل:

Indefinite articles (a - an) حروف النكرة

We use them to refer to a person or a thing that is not identified.

نستخدمهما للإشارة إلى شخص أو شيء غير محدد.

(a + singular countable nouns that starts with a consonant)





I would like to eat a banana.



She is making a meal.

(an + singular countable nouns that starts with a vowel)





He has an apple.



An eagle is a tertiary consumer.



Vowels are (a - i - e - o - u).

some - any

We use them with plural and uncountable nouns to state number or quantity.

نستخدمهما قبل الأسماء الجمع والأسماء التي لا تعد للتعبير عن الرقم أو الكمية.

some + plural countable or uncountable noun in a positive sentence.
اسم جمع يعد أو لا يعد في جملة مثبتة

e.g.



I would like some pineapples, please.



Hana has some orange juice.

any + plural countable or uncountable noun in a negative sentence or question.
اسم جمع يعد أو لا يعد في جملة منفية أو سؤال



e.g. We haven't got any onions.



Are there any butter in the fridge?



- لاحظ استخدام some في تقديم العروض :

e.g.
A: Would you like some water?
B: Yes, please.

- أو في الطلب:

e.g.
A: Can I have some sugar?
B: Yes, sure.

- لاحظ استخدام "What would you like" للسؤال عما تود طلبه:

e.g.
A: What would you like?
B: I would like some lemons. Please.

لاحظ استخدام "any" في السؤال للسؤال عن توفر الأشياء:



1 A: Is there any salt?
B: No, there isn't any.

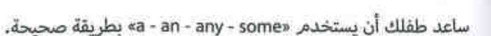
2 A: Are there any tomatoes?
B: Yes, there are some.

Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Samar has (a – any – some) green apples.
2 Nader doesn't want (an – any – some) juice.
3 I saw (a – an – some) eagle yesterday.

Parents' tips
Help your child use "a - an - any - some" correctly.

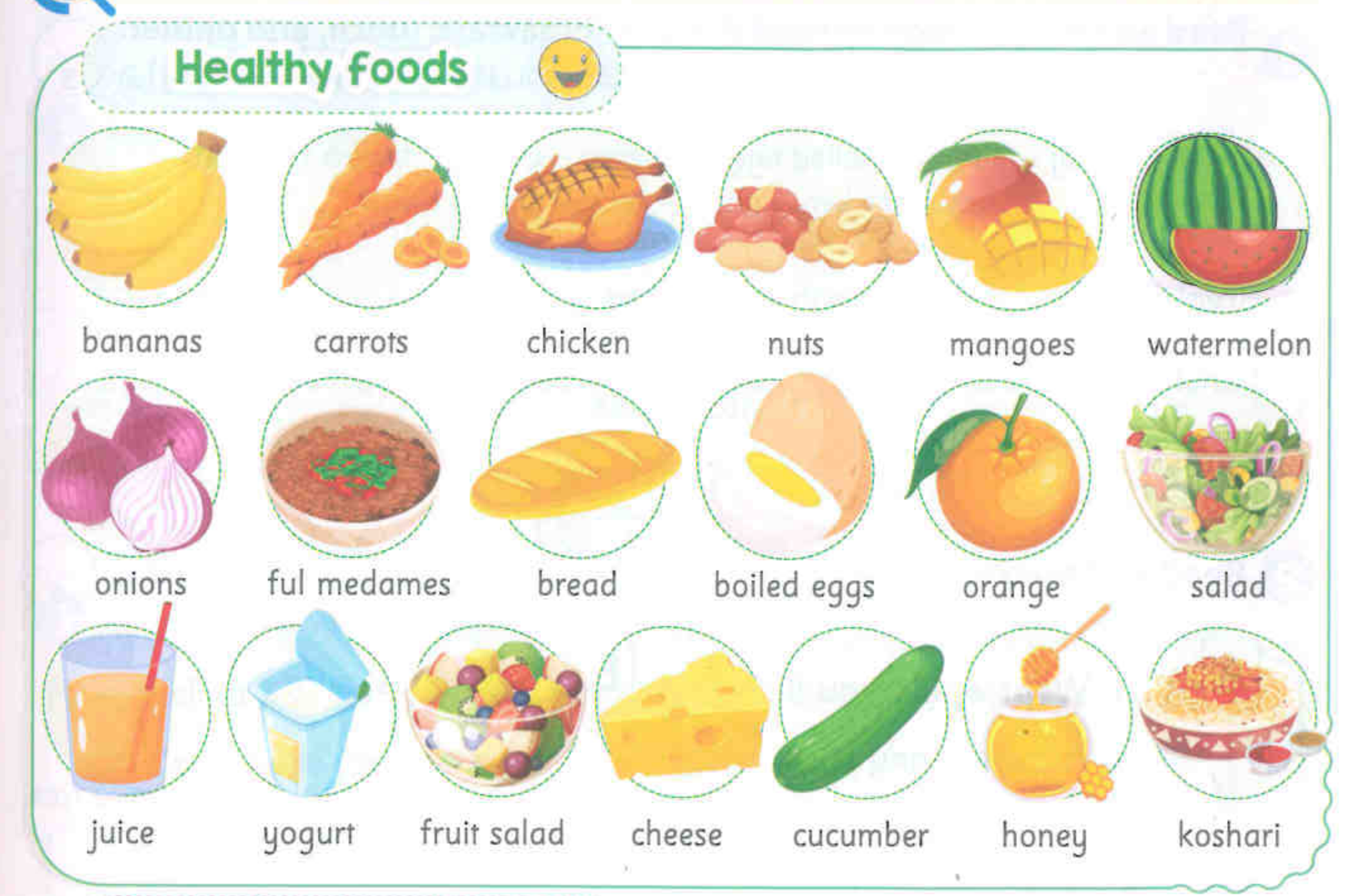

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم «a - an - any - some» بطريقة صحيحة.



Healthy and unhealthy food

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Healthy foods



Unhealthy foods



Tip! Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs.
تأكد من تناول نظام غذائي متوازن حتى يحصل جسمك على العناصر الغذائية التي يحتاجها.

e.g. ful medames – salad – yogurt and honey

Parents' tips
Help your child identify the pictures to recognize the difference between healthy and unhealthy foods.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الصور ليعرف الفرق بين الأطعمة الصحية وغير الصحية.




Lesson 3

14

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read and make a healthy food diary for breakfast, lunch, and dinner:
اقرأ وجهز طعامًا صحيًّا للإفطار والغداء والعشاء: 5

candy – burger – boiled eggs – cheese – yogurt – french fries – fish – chicken – pizza – cake – juice – bread

Breakfast : ....

Lunch : ....

Dinner : ....

2 Read and match:
اقرأ وصل: 4



A

1 A: What would you like?

2 A: Are there any carrots?

3 A: Can I have some coffee, please?

4 A: How about buying some rice?

B

( ) B: Yes, sure.

( ) B: No, thank you. I have rice.

( ) B: I would like some onions.

( ) B: No, there aren't any carrots.

3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list:
اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 5

home – shopping – some – sorry – buy



Ali and Hany go shopping with their mom every week. Last week, mom had pineapples, mangoes, grapes, and tomatoes on her .... list. She needed to ....bread, too. "Can I have .... oranges, Mom?" Asked Hany. Mom said, "No ....,you can't. It's not on our list". They bought what they needed and went .... early.

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child read and write. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب.

(2) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل.

(3) Help your child fill in gaps. ساعد طفلك أن يملأ الفراغات.



TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 3





12





Listening

1 Listen and complete:
استمع وأكمل: 4

sure – orange juice – would – have

Adel : What .... you like to drink, Samir?

Samir : I'd like some .... , please.

Adel : Can I .... some coffee, please?

Samir : Yes, ...



Reading





2 Read and choose the correct answer:
اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1 Salma likes to eat koshari for (desert – dessert – lunch).

2 Can I have (some – an – any) water, please?

3 Pineapples were not on mom's shopping (phone – list – market).

4 Nader hasn't got (some – a – any) grapes in his plate.



Writing



3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences:
اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1 you – Would – like – juice – some – orange?

....

2 wants – for – Ali – koshari – dinner.

....

3 didn't – any – Nadia – buy – bread.

....

4 I – , please – Can – chocolate – some – have?

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

STUDY



Lesson 4





A Story





Listen and say: استمع وقل :

Main vocabulary

beanstalk	جذع نبتة الفول	poor (adj.)	فقير	special (adj.)	خاص/ مميز
hungry (adj.)	جائع	top	قمة	castle	قلعة
suddenly	فجأة	giant (adj.)	عملاق	gold coins	عملات ذهبية
golden egg	بيضة ذهبية	magic hen	دجاجة سحرية	terrible (adj.)	مرعب - فظيع
axe	فأس	free (adj.)	حر	kind (adj.)	طيب القلب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعــال منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
want	يريد	wanted	need	يحتاج	needed
climb	يتسلق	climbed	count	يعد	counted
look	ينظر	looked	save	ينقذ	saved
grab	ينتزع	grabbed	chop	يقطع	chopped
Irregular verbs			أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	sell	يبيع	sold
meet	يقابل	met	buy	يشترى	bought
throw	يرمى	threw	think	يعتقد	thought

Expressions and Phrases

get a good price	احصل على سعر جيد	make you rich	ستجعلك غنيًا
out of the window	خارج النافذة	up to the clouds	عاليًا نحو السحاب
go inside	يذهب إلى الداخل	at last	أخيرًا
happily ever after	فى سعادة دائمة		

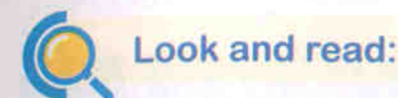
Definitions

giant (adj.)	عملاق	a very,very big person	شخص عملاق جدًا
grab (v.)	ينتزع	to pick something up quickly	أن ينتزع شيئًا ما سريعًا
castle	قلعة	a very large building built a long time ago	هو بناء واسع بنى منذ فترة طويلة
chop (v.)	يقطع	to cut something down	أن يقطع شيئًا ما
cage	قفص	a box in which we keep animals	هو عبارة عن صندوق نضع فيه الحيوانات

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



Jack and the Beanstalk "جاك وجذع نبتة الفول"

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

1 Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!"

On the way to the market, Jack met on old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man.

Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.





The middle

2 The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. It went all the way up to the clouds. Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the very top, he saw a castle. Jack went inside to see if anyone needed help.

Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant. He was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the table. The hen was in a cage. Next to the hen was a golden egg.

The hen looked very sad. It was a magic hen, and it could talk! "Help me, please," cried the hen. "Save me from this terrible giant!"



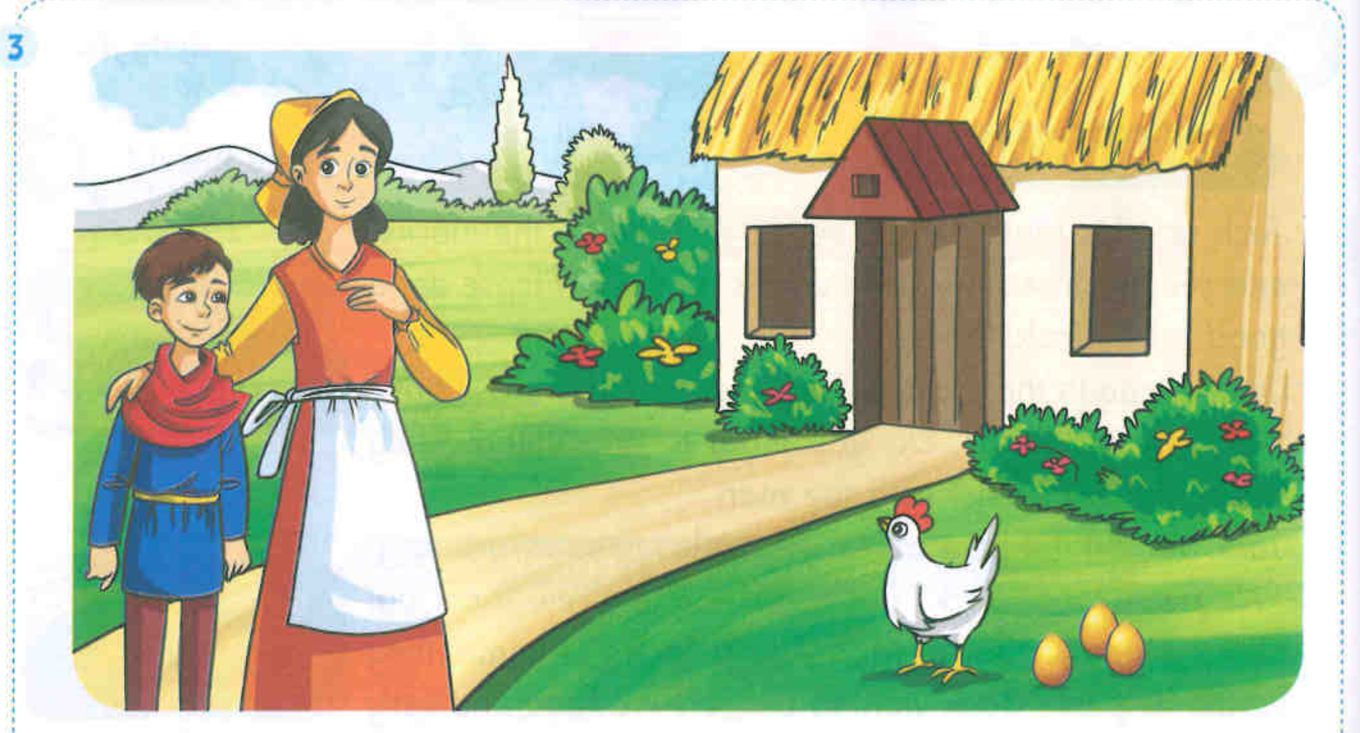


الترجمة:

- جاك وأمه يعيشان فى فقر. قالت الأم: «اذهب الى السوق وقم ببيع آخر بقرة لدينا، واحصل على سعر جيد».
قابل جاك رجلًا عجوزًا وهو فى طريقه إلى السوق. قال له الرجل: «أنا لدى حبات فول مميزة. هل تريد أن تشتريها؟ سوف تجعلك غنيًا".
اشترى جاك حبات الفول ولكن غضبت أمه كثيرًا. قالت الأم: «نحن بحاجة إلى الطعام يا جاك وليس إلى حبات الفول»، ثم قامت برميها خارج النافذة. «آسف يا أمى ظننت أنها ربما تساعدنا» أجاب جاك ثم اتجه إلى الفراش حزينًا وجائعًا للغاية.
- فى صباح اليوم التالى رأى جاك جذع نبتة فول طويلًا جدًا فى حديقة المنزل. كانت عالية نحو السحاب. تسلق جاك جذع الشجرة وفى نهايتها وجد قلعة فاتجه إلى داخلها ليرى إذا كان هناك شخص ما يريد مساعدة.
فجأة، رأى جاك رجلًا عملاقًا كبيرًا جدًا. كان العملاق يقوم بعد العملات الذهبية، وكانت هناك دجاجة على الطاولة، فى قفص. وبجانب الدجاجة كان هناك بيض ذهبى.
- كانت الدجاجة تبدو حزينة جدًا. فقد كانت دجاجة سحرية وبإمكانها التحدث. «ساعدنى أرجوك وأنقذنى من هذا العملاق المرعب»، صرخت الدجاجة».

The end

3



As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe. He chopped down the beanstalk. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. The hen was happy! It was free at last!

"Thank you for helping me, Jack. You are a kind boy. Can I please stay with you and your mother?" Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. They sold the golden eggs to buy food. Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	Mom was angry because they were poor.	( )	( )
2	The old man gave Jack special beans.	( )	( )
3	The magic hen was happy with the giant man.	( )	( )

Parents' tips

Help your child read the story correctly.

ساعد طفلك يقرأ القصة بطريقة صحيحة.

• بمجرد أن وصل جاك إلى حديقة المنزل، قام بالتقاط الفأس وقطع جذع نبتة الفول. وقع العملاق على الأرض وهرب بعيدًا. كانت الدجاجة سعيدة فقد أصبحت حرة أخيرًا.

• قالت الدجاجة : «شكرًا لك على مساعدتى يا جاك، أنت ولد طيب القلب. هل بإمكانى البقاء معك أنت ووالدتك؟ لم يعد جاك وأمه فقيرين بعد ذلك، فقد باعا البيض الذهبى واشتريا الطعام. وعاش جاك وأمه فى سعادة دائمة.

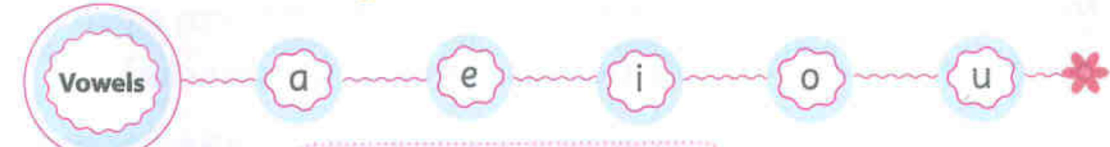


Pronunciation

Short and long vowels

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشِر وقل:

There are five vowels in English



Short vowels



Long vowels





Some words sound the same but have different spellings.

بعض الأصوات فى الكلمات تنطق بنفس الصوت ولكن الهجاء مختلف.

	a–e /eɪ/		ai /eɪ/		ay /eɪ/	
e.g.	cake	snake	rain	pain	gray	stay

Check point

Listen and circle the words with the long vowel:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمات التى تحتوى على صوت حرف متحرك طويل:

1 cake – candy 2 milk – rice 3 bean – egg

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the short and long vowels and let him/her say the words correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والممدودة ودعه ينطق الكلمات بطريقة صحيحة.



Math

Decimal fractions



Look, read, and notice: انظر ، اقرأ ولاحظ:

A fraction is a number that describes the relationship between a part (represented by the numerator) and a whole (represented in the denominator).

الكسر يوضح العلاقة بين الجزء (متمثلًا فى البسط) والكل (متمثلًا فى المقام).

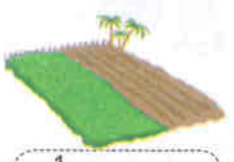
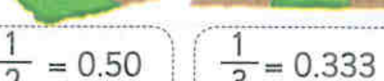
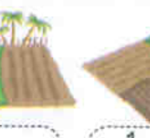
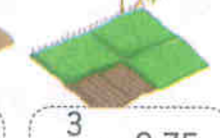
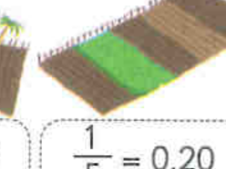


Numerator (the number of parts we have)

$$\frac{2}{4}$$

Denominator (the total parts of the whole)

e.g.

$\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$ | $\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$ | $\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$ | $\frac{3}{4} = 0.75$ | $\frac{2}{5} = 0.40$ | $\frac{1}{5} = 0.20$



Note

The fraction in its decimal form is the numerator divided by the denominator.

الكسر فى صورته العشرية عندما يتم قسمة البسط على المقام.

e.g. • $\frac{1}{3} = 1 \div 3 = 0.333$ • $\frac{1}{4} = 1 \div 4 = 0.25$

Did you know? $0.4 = 0.40 = 0.400$

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):



		True	False
1	$\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$ SB	( )	( )
2	$\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$ SB	( )	( )
3	$\frac{3}{4} = 3.4$ SB	( )	( )

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the decimal fractions correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكسور العشرية بطريقة صحيحة.



PRACTICE Lesson 4

14

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating



1 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. (Chop – Grab – Castle) is to pick something up quickly.
2. We can sell things at the (market – garden – castle).
3. The (giant – farmer – driver) is someone who is very big.
4. (Cage – Castle – Garden) is a very large building built a long time ago.



2 Read and put (< , > or =): اقرأ وضع علامة (<، > أو =): 4

1. $\frac{1}{3}$ ☐ 0.333
2. $\frac{2}{5}$ ☐ 0:5
3. $\frac{1}{4}$ ☐ 0.25
4. $\frac{1}{2}$ ☐ $\frac{3}{5}$



3 Read and sort: اقرأ وصنف: 6

lime – cake – egg – grape – bread – milk

SHORT VOWEL	LONG VOWEL
....	....
....	....
....	....

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child choose the correct words.
(2) Help your child read and put (<, > or =).
(3) Help your child read and sort.

ساعد طفلك أن يختار الكلمات الصحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع علامة (= or <،>).
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصنف.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 4





Listening



11

1 Listen and circle the words with the long vowel: استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمات التى تحتوى على صوت متحرك طويل:

4

1 lime – milk 2 meat – egg 3 candy – cake 4 rice – fish

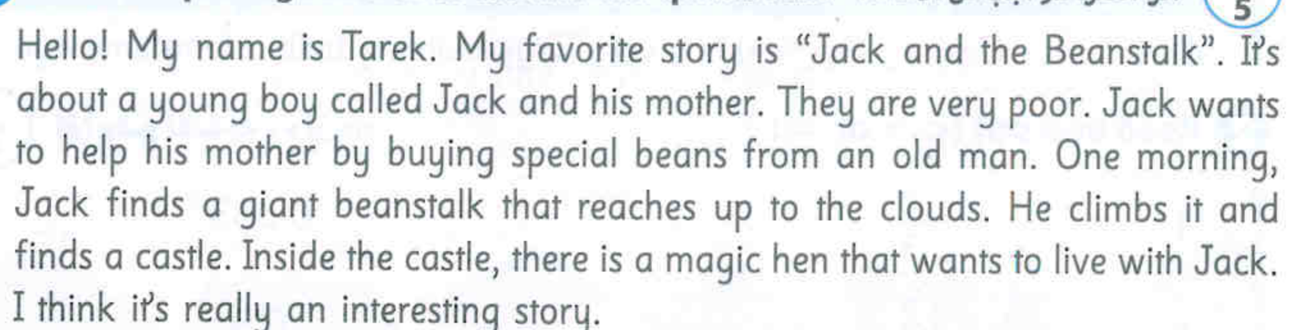


Reading

2 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:



5



Hello! My name is Tarek. My favorite story is "Jack and the Beanstalk". It's about a young boy called Jack and his mother. They are very poor. Jack wants to help his mother by buying special beans from an old man. One morning, Jack finds a giant beanstalk that reaches up to the clouds. He climbs it and finds a castle. Inside the castle, there is a magic hen that wants to live with Jack. I think it's really an interesting story.

A Choose the correct word:

1 Tarek's favorite (meal – food – story) is "Jack and the Beanstalk".

2 Jack and his mother were very (happy – poor – sleepy).

3 Jack finds a (hen – castle – cloud) on the top of the beanstalk.

B Answer the following questions:

4 What does Jack find inside the castle? ....

5 What does Tarek think about the story? ....



Writing



3 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية:

2

1 i am sorry Mom

....

2 how many parts does hesham have

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

STUDY



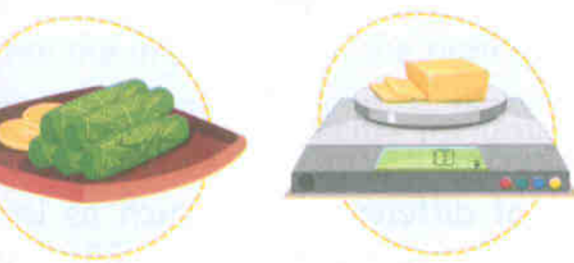
Lesson 5 Writing

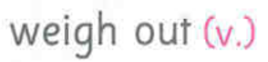




Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشِر وقل:

Main vocabulary









stuffed محشى | weigh out (v.) يزن | mix (v.) يخلط | pour (v.) يصب







bake (v.) يخبز | boil (v.) يغلى | cut (v.) يقطع

Extra vocabulary

ingredients	مكونات	lentil soup	شوربة عدس
add (v.)	يضيف	mixture	خليط
baking dish	وعاء الخبز	diamond shape	شكل المعين
saucepan	قدر/إناء	organized (adj.)	منظم
temperature	درجة حرارة	follow (v.)	يتبع
instructions	تعليمات	carefully	بعناية

Vocabulary Check

recipe = ingredients + instructions

الوصفة تعنى المكونات مع التعليمات الخاصة بصنع الشيء.

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code .



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:





Ingredients المكونات

2 cups semolina
كوبان من السميد

1 cup yogurt
كوب من الزبادى

$\frac{1}{3}$ cup sugar
ثلث كوب من السكر

$\frac{1}{2}$ cup melted butter
نصف كوب زبدة ذائبة

1 tsp baking powder
ملعقة صغيرة من مسحوق الخبز

1 cup coconut
كوب من جوز الهند

almonds
لوز

syrup
شراب السكر

$\frac{3}{4}$ cup water
ثلاثة أرباع كوب مياه

2 tbsp honey
ملعقتان كبيرتان من العسل

My favorite recipe

We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, *ful medames*, and stuffed vegetables. My favorite thing to bake is *basbousa*. This is how you make it.

First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this!

Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.

You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the *basbousa* in the oven for 30 minutes.

Make the syrup. Put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan. Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes. Take it out of the oven and let it cool. Then pour the syrup over the *basbousa*. Cut the *basbousa* and share it with your family!

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the pictures and read the passage correctly. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الصور ويقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة: نحن نطهو العديد من الأشياء كشوربة العدس والفول المدمس والخضار المحشى. أنا أفضل خبز البسبوسة. إليك كيف تقوم بعملها.

- فى البداية، أنت تحتاج إلى إشعال الفرن لتسخينه. قم بوزن المكونات ثم اخلط السميد وجوز الهند والسكر والزبدة المذابة. يجب عليك خلطها باليد. أنا حقًّا أحب فعل هذا.
- ثم أضف الزبادى وصب الخليط فى وعاء الخبز.
- يمكنك استخدام السكين لصنع أشكال المعين فوق البسبوسة. ضع اللوز فى كل شكل . إنها تبدو حقًّا جميلة. قدر لخبزها فى الفرن مدة ثلاثين دقيقة.
- قم بعمل شراب السكر. ضع العسل والماء وعصير الليمون فى قدر وقم بغلى المزيج لمدة ١٠ دقائق.
- أخرج البسبوسة من الفرن ودعها تبرد ثم قم بصب شراب السكر عليها. قم بتقطيعها وشاركها مع عائلتك.

How to write a recipe



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

- Say what your favorite dish is. قل ما هو طبقك المفضل.
- Say the steps for making the dish. Use words like: first, then, and finally.
قل خطوات إعداد الطبق . واستخدم كلمات مثل: أولًا، بعد ذلك، فى النهاية.
- Say how to make the dish look nice. قل كيف يمكنك أن تجعل الطبق يبدو رائعًا.
- Write the ingredients in the right place. اكتب المكونات فى المكان الصحيح.

Look and write the recipe for your favorite dish:

Ingredients	Instructions
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....

Stick here

Parents' tips

Help your child read and notice how to write a recipe correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويلاحظ كيف يمكنه كتابة وصفة بطريقة صحيحة.





Lesson 6
Project

A poster about my favorite fruits / vegetables



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Steps to make a poster: خطوات تصميم الملصق:

- Research information about these points: ابحث عن معلومات حول هذه النقاط:

1. Where does the plant grow?
2. What dishes can you make with it?
3. What other ingredients can you add to it to make delicious recipes?

- Write the text. قم بكتابة النص.

- Draw or paste a picture of the fruit/ vegetable. قم برسم أو لصق صورة للفاكهة والخضار.

- Revise to correct spelling and punctuation mistakes.

راجع النص لتصحيح أي أخطاء هجائية أو في علامات الترقيم.

Mangoes grow in Egypt. We can make a lot of drinks [1] and dishes [2] with it. We can make delicious mango juice [3] or cocktail juice [4]. We can also make a fruit salad [5] and a mango cake [6].



(1)	مشروبات
(2)	أطباق
(3)	عصير مانجو
(4)	عصير كوكتيل
(5)	سلطة فواكه
(6)	كيك المانجو


Parents' tips


Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة: المانجو تنمو في مصر. يمكننا عمل العديد من المشروبات والأطباق باستخدامها. يمكننا عمل عصير المانجو اللذيذ أو عصير الكوكتيل. يمكننا أيضًا عمل سلطة الفواكه وكيك المانجو.

REVIEW



Vocabulary

Food and Drink

beans, eggs, carrots, chocolate, coconuts, lemons, limes, onions, pineapples, chicken

Language Focus

Indefinite articles (a - an)

(a + singular countable noun that starts with a consonant)

e.g. I would like to eat a banana.



(an + singular countable noun that starts with a vowel)

e.g. He has an apple.



(some - any)

some + plural countable or uncountable noun in a positive sentence.

e.g. I would like some pineapples, please.



any + plural countable or uncountable noun in a negative sentence or question.

e.g. We haven't got any onions.



Pronunciation

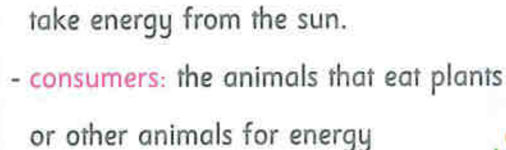
Short vowels



Long vowels

Science

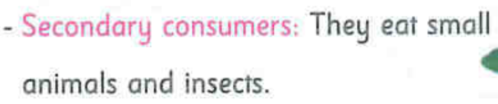
Food Chain



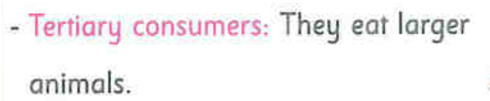
- Producers: The trees and plants that take energy from the sun.
- consumers: the animals that eat plants or other animals for energy



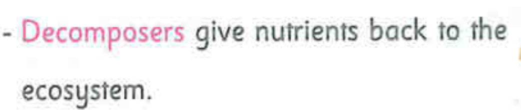
- Primary consumers: They eat plants.



- Secondary consumers: They eat small animals and insects.



- Tertiary consumers: They eat larger animals.



- Decomposers give nutrients back to the ecosystem.



Check Your Vocabulary



Lesson 1

بيض	....	جزر	....
جوز هند	....	فول	....
بصل	....	ليمون حامض	....
ليمون	....	أناناس	....
دجاجة	....	شيكولاتة	....

Lesson 2

كائنات منتجة	....	مستهلكات ثانوية	....
كائنات محللة	....	مستهلكات أولية	....
ثعبان	....	حمص	....
مكونات	....	بذور	....
البقوليات	....	خنفساء	....

Lesson 3

بطيخ	....	موز	....
مانجو	....	دجاج	....
كوكيز	....	حلوى	....

Lesson 4

لبن	....	بيضة	....
فول	....	عنب	....
أرز	....	كيك	....
عملاق	....	فقير	....
بيضة ذهبية	....	دجاجة سحرية	....

Lesson 5

يزن	....	محشى	....
يصب	....	يخبز	....
يقطع	....	يخلط	....
وصفة	....	يغلي	....

WRITING TIME

Check your writing

 The paragraph should start with a topic sentence.

 The paragraph should end with an ending sentence.

 **Look and write a paragraph of 30–40 words.**

My favorite food

like – mangoes – father – juice

I like chicken and fish. But my favorite food is mango. My father grows mango trees in the garden. I use mangoes to make delicious mango juice. We can use them to make fruit salad, too. If we add sugar and milk, we can turn them into delicious mahalabia.



Chickpeas

chickpeas – fruits – belong – recipes

My father has a farm. He grows chickpea plants. Chickpeas aren't fruits or vegetables. They belong to a food group called legumes. Chickpeas are an important ingredient in many recipes. They are a healthy food that can help your digestive system work properly.



Food chain

energy – producers – sun – animals

A food chain shows how plants and animals get their energy. Plants are called producers. They get their energy from the sun. Animals are called consumers. They get energy by eating plants and other animals. Tertiary consumers eat larger animals.



My favorite recipe

dessert – oven – ingredients – finally

My favorite dessert is cake. First, you need to turn on the oven. Then you weigh out the ingredients and mix the milk, sugar, melted butter, and eggs. You can mix these ingredients by hand or a blender. Finally, bake the cake for 45 minutes.



AL ADWAA TEST 1



30



Listening



1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 2

aren't - garden - there - trees

Lama : What are you growing in your .... ,Walaa?
Walaa : We are growing lime and mango ....
Lama : Are .... any lemon trees?
Walaa : No, there .... any.



Reading

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 5



A	B
1 A: Where do you grow mango trees?	( ) are called producers.
2 Vegetables and fruits are	( ) the market.
3 Plants like date palm and wheat	( ) B: No, sorry. You had enough.
4 A: Can I have some tea?	( ) B: We grow mango trees in the garden.
5 You can buy and sell many things at ...	( ) healthy food.

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 5



SB

1. We use (pineapples – chickpeas – coconut) to make koshari.
2. Are there (some – any – an) tomatoes left?
3. Producers get their energy from (insects – larger animals – the sun).
4. When you (grab – grow – plant) something, you pick it up quickly.
5. How about (has – had – having) some juice?

4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: 5



Hello! My name is Sami. I like to work with my uncle in his farm every summer. This summer, we are growing chickpeas. Chickpeas are an important ingredient in many Egyptian recipes, such as koshari and hummus. They aren't fruits or vegetables. But they belong to a food group called legumes. Other legumes are lentils, black beans and peanuts. Chickpeas are a healthy food that can keep your digestive system working properly.

A Choose the correct word:

1. Koshari and hummus are (French – British – Egyptian) recipes.
2. Chickpeas are (fruits – legumes – vegetables).
3. Chickpeas are a/an (healthy – unhealthy – bad) food. It can help your digestive system work properly.

B Answer the following questions:

4. Where does Sami work every summer? ....
5. What food group do chickpeas belong to? ....



Writing

5 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 5



1. have – Can – I – some – please – tea,?
....
2. are – in the – There – lots of – chickpeas – field.
....
3. like – What – you – would – drink – to?
....
4. turn – We – into – molokhia – delicious – soup.
....
5. our – grow – in – We – mangoes – garden.
....

6 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5



"Mangoes"

favorite – grow – juice – delicious

....
....
....
....



7 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 3



1. rana s favorite food is molokhia
....
2. where can shady sell the chickpea seeds
....



UNIT 1



AL ADWAA TEST 2

30





Listening

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: (2)

finish – reading – course – favorite

Sally : What are you .... , Soha?
Soha : I am reading "*Jack and the Beanstalk*". It's my .... story.
Sally : Can I borrow it when you .... it?
Soha : Yes, of ....



Reading

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: (5)

A

1. A: What's your favorite food, Mom?
2. Chocolate isn't healthy,
3. You have to turn on the oven ..
4. A: What would you like?
5. Amir planted $\frac{1}{2}$ of his field.

B

( ) to get it hot before cooking basbousa.
( ) B: I'd like some lentil soup.
( ) B: My favorite food is fish.
( ) This is 0.5 of his field.
( ) but it's OK if you eat a little.



3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: (5)

digestive – ingredient – meals – legumes – healthy

My grandpa grows chickpeas. Chickpeas are an important .... in many recipes. Chickpeas belong to a group of food called .... Chickpeas are .... food. They can keep your .... system working properly. We use chickpeas in delicious ....

4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: (5)

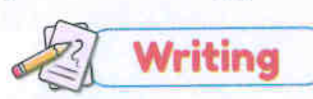
A food chain shows how animals and plants get their energy. Plants are called producers. They get their energy from the sun. Animals are consumers. They eat plants or other animals for energy. Primary consumers, such as caterpillars and beetles, eat plants. Secondary consumers, such as lizards and snakes, eat insects and smaller animals. Tertiary consumers, such as foxes and eagles, eat larger animals.

A Tick (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Caterpillars and beetles are called producers.	( )	( )
2 Secondary consumers eat plants.	( )	( )
3 Foxes and eagles eat larger animals.	( )	( )

B Answer the following questions:

4. What does the food chain show? ....
5. How do producers get their energy? ....

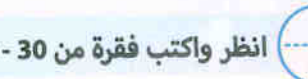


Writing



5 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً صحيحة: (5)

1. there – Are – lime – any – in the – trees – garden?
....
2. are – Chicken – and – healthy – foods – meat.
....
3. consumers – Primary – plants – eat.
....
4. like – Would – you – orange – an?
....
5. any – Samar – have – didn't – fruits.
....



6 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: (5)

"How to bake a cake"



favorite – First, – add – cool

....
....
....
....





7 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: (3)

1. koshari is a delicious egyptian recipe
....
2. what's your mom s favorite food
....



Unit 2 I want to be healthy!

أريد أن أكون بصحة جيدة!



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to: — بنهاية هذه الوحدة،سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - listen, read, research, and write about sports. — يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الرياضة.
  - talk about sports he/she is good or bad at. — يتحدث عن الرياضة التى يجيدها أو لا يجيدها.
  - read and listen to a science fiction story. — يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة خيال علمى.
  - learn how to say single-syllable words. — يتعلم كيف يقول كلمات ذات مقطع واحد.
  - write a biography about a famous Egyptian sportsperson. — يكتب سيرة ذاتية عن رياضى مصرى شهير.
  - give a presentation about how to help his/her local environment. — يقدم عرضًا عن كيفية المساعدة فى بيئته المحلية.

Life skills

Critical thinking: — التفكير النقدى:

- Possible solutions about how to make local environments less polluted and more pleasant.
- الحلول الممكنة حول كيفية جعل البيئات المحلية أقل تلوثًا وأكثر سعادة.

Warm up

Unit two is about different kinds of sports, what you are good or bad at, where you play them, what you wear to play them, and famous Egyptian sportspersons. It is also about how it is important to stop pollution and live in a clean environment.

Did you know?

There are lots of unusual sports you can try. They're fun and they can keep you healthy! One of these games is bubble football.



Bubble football is a game played on a modified pitch and with an inflatable* bubble ball enclosing* each player. The bubble covers the entire top half of the player, restricting* movement and impairing* a player's vision.

I can find it out!



There are many unusual sports. In the Sepak Takraw game, you can't use your hands. you must use your feet, head, and knees only.

الترجمة:

- تدور الوحدة الثانية حول أنواع مختلفة من الرياضات، وما تجيده أو ما لا تجيده، وأين تلعبها، وما ترتديه لتلعبها، والرياضيين المصريين المشهورين. يتعلق الأمر أيضًا بمدى أهمية إيقاف التلوث والعيش فى بيئة نظيفة.
- هناك الكثير من الرياضات غير العادية التى يمكنك تجربتها. إنها ممتعة ويمكنها الحفاظ على صحتك! إحدى هذه الألعاب هى كرة القدم الفقاعية. كرة القدم الفقاعية هى لعبة تُلعب على أرضية معدلة وبواسطة كرة فقاعية قابلة للنفخ تحيط بكل لاعب. تغطى الفقاعة النصف العلوى بالكامل من اللاعب، مما يقيد الحركة ويضعف رؤية اللاعب.
- هناك العديد من الرياضات غير العادية. فى لعبة Sepak Takraw لا يمكنك استخدام يديك. يجب أن تستخدم قدميك ورأسك وركبتيك فقط.

inflatable	قابلة للنفخ	enclose	تحوط	restrict	تقيد	impair	تضعف




Lesson 1
Sports



Main vocabulary





Listen, point, and say: استمع،أشر وقل:



kung fu
كونغ فو



tennis
تنس



sailing
إبحار



swimming
سباحة



squash
إسكواش



karate
كاراتيه



football
كرة القدم



handball
كرة اليد



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (sh) فى (squash) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (k) فى كلمة (know) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (e) فى (karate) ينطق /i/.

Extra vocabulary

sports	رياضات	old (adj.)	قديم	match	مباراة
between	بين	game	لعبة	club	نادى
later	لاحقًا	awesome (adj.)	رائع	worse (adj.)	أسوأ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعال منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
watch	يشاهد	watched	love	يحب	loved
like	يحب	liked	agree	يوافق	agreed
try	يحاول	tried			
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
win	يفوز	won	know	يعرف	knew
go	يذهب	went	see	يرى	saw
have	يملك/عنده	had			

Expressions and Phrases

talk about	يتحدث عن	It's great!	إنه لشىء رائع!	Me too!	وأنا أيضًا!
good at ...	جيد فى ...	bad at ...	سيئ فى ...	What about you?	ماذا عنك؟
So do I.	وأنا كذلك.	better than ...	أفضل من ...	Let's ...	هيا ...
my favorites are...	مفضلاتى هى ...	looks fun	يبدو ممتعًا	See you later!	أراك لاحقًا!

Vocabulary Check

"TV" is an abbreviation for the word "television".

- TV هو اختصار لكلمة television
- الأسماء المركبة هى الأسماء التى يتم تشكيلها بإضافة (اسم + اسم)

e.g. hand + ball = handball

Check point

Look and write: انظر واكتب:

1 ....

2



....

3



....

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك فى التعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.





Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Selim What are you watching?
ماذا تشاهد؟



Wael An old match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini - it's great. I love squash!
مباراة قديمة بين رنيم الوليلي ونور الشربيني - إنها رائعة، أحب الإسكواش!



Selim Me too! Who's winning?
أنا أيضًا! من الرابح؟



Wael Raneem - she's very good at playing squash.
رنيم - هى جيدة جدًّا فى لعب الإسكواش.

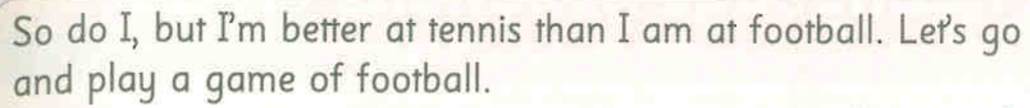


Selim I know. What sport are you good at?
أنا أعرف. ما هى الرياضة التى تجيدها؟



Wael I'm very good at playing tennis, but I'm bad at playing handball. What about you?
أنا جيد جدًّا فى لعب التنس، لكنى لا أجيد لعب كرة اليد. وماذا عنك؟

Selim I'm good at playing squash, but I'm bad at playing tennis. I love football too.
أنا جيد فى لعب الإسكواش،لكنى لا أجيد لعب التنس. أنا أحب كرة القدم أيضًا.





Wael So do I, but I'm better at tennis than I am at football. Let's go and play a game of football.
وأنا كذلك، لكنى أفضل فى التنس من كرة القدم. دعنا نذهب ونلعب مباراة كرة القدم.



Selim Yes, let's go to the club later.
حسنًا،دعنا نذهب إلى النادى لاحقًا.



Wael Yes! And what other sports do you watch on TV?
نعم! وما هى الرياضات الأخرى التى تشاهدها على التليفزيون؟

Selim I love watching karate and kung fu. And you?
أحب مشاهدة الكاراتيه والكونغ فو. وأنت؟



Wael My favorites are swimming and sailing. Sailing looks fun!
مفضلاتى هى السباحة والإبحار. الإبحار يبدو ممتعًا!

Selim Great! So what time do you want to play football?
رائع! إذن ما هو الوقت الذى تريد أن تلعب فيه كرة القدم؟



Wael About five?
فى حوالى الساعة الخامسة؟



Selim Awesome - see you in the club later!
رائع - أراك فى النادى لاحقًا!

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.



Language Functions

1 Expressing likes: التعبير عن المفضلات:

I love / like ....

e.g. - I love squash.

2 Expressing agreement: التعبير عن الموافقة فى الرأى:

Me too! / So do I.

e.g. A: I love squash.
B: Me too!

A: I love football.
B: So do I.



Irregular comparative adjectives: صفات المقارنة غير المنتظمة:

Adjective	Comparative adjective
good جيد e.g. I'm good at squash.	better ..... than أفضل ... من e.g. I'm better at tennis than I am at football.
bad سيئ e.g. I'm bad at playing football.	worse ..... than أسوأ ... من e.g. I'm worse at playing handball than I am at tennis.



I can find it out!
The most popular sport in Egypt is football. Everyone in the country loves to watch national and international teams compete together, and they also like playing the game.
الرياضة الأكثر شعبية فى مصر هى كرة القدم. يحب الجميع فى البلد مشاهدة الفرق المحلية والعالمية وهى تتنافس معًا، كما أنهم يحبون ممارسة اللعبة.




Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 A: I need some juice. B: (As – So – For) do I.
2 She is (good – well – better) at English than she is at French.
3 A: I like tennis. B: (I – Me – My) too!





Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب: 4

1 
2 
3 
4 

....

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 4




A
1 A: What sport are you good at?
2 A: What are you watching?
3 I'm very good at playing squash,
4 A: Who's winning?

B
( ) but I'm bad at playing tennis.
( ) B: Raneem El Weleily.
( ) B: I'm good at playing football.
( ) B: I'm watching an old squash match.

3 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 2

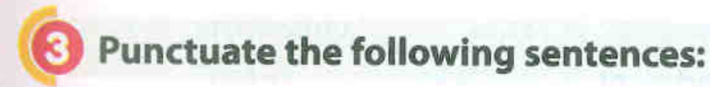


1 let s go to the club later

....

2 i love watching karate on tV

....



Parents' tips
(1) Help your child write the words. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب الكلمات.
(2) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentence or question. ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة أو السؤال المعطى.





TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 1



13

Listening

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

tennis – sport – karate – watch

A: What .... are you good at?
B: I'm very good at playing ....
A: What other sports do you .... on TV?
B: I love watching .... and kung fu.



Reading

2 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 5



tennis – love – match – great – at

Yesterday, I watched an old .... between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini. It was .... ! I .... squash. I am good .... squash. But I am better at ....



Writing

3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4



1 fun – looks – Sailing.

....

2 playing – She's – squash – good – at.

....

3 good – What – you – sport – are – at?

....

4 watching – karate – I – love – kung fu – and.

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

STUDY



Lesson 2







A I'm good at ...



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:


climb trees
يتسلق الأشجار


cook
يطبخ

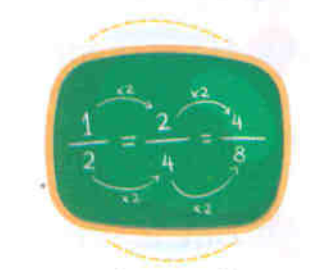

do jigsaws
يحل الصور المتقطعة


walk across the desert
يمشي عبر الصحراء


write poems
يكتب قصائد


help in the kitchen
يساعد في المطبخ


make cakes
يُعد (يصنع) الكعك


do math
يحل المسائل الحسابية

Vocabulary Check

e.g. do		play		go	
do karate	يلعب كاراتيه	play football	يلعب كرة القدم	go swimming	يسبح
do kung fu	يلعب كونغ فو	play chess	يلعب الشطرنج	go sailing	يبحر
do taekwondo	يلعب تايكوندو	play tennis	يلعب التنس		
do jigsaws	يلعب الصور المتقطعة	play handball	يلعب كرة اليد		

Check point

Look and write: انظر واكتب:

1  ....

2  ....

3  ....

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the new words and let him/her say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



B Language focus

Listen, point, and say: استمع،أشر وقل:

Usage: When we talk about things we can or can't do well. We can use "good, great, and bad + at".

عندما نتحدث عن الأشياء التي نستطيع فعلها أو لا نستطيع فعلها جيدًا نستخدم «جيد..، رائع..، وغير جيد ..» .

1. be (am/is/are) + good / bad / great + at (verb + ing).

We use the -ing form with good/great/bad at.

e.g. I'm very good at drawing. أنا أجيد الرسم.



* To make the -ing form, we take the infinitive of the verb (play) and add -ing (playing).

e.g. He is great at playing table tennis. هو رائع في لعب تنس الطاولة.

* If the verb ends in -e (make), we delete the -e and add -ing (making).

e.g. She is very bad at making cakes. هي غير جيدة في إعداد الكعك.



2. be (am/is/are) + good / bad / great + at + noun.

e.g. I'm very good at handball. أنا أجيد كرة اليد.









Note

We use (why) to ask about reason, and we use (because) to answer and give reasons.

e.g. A: Why are you good at table tennis?

B: I'm good at table tennis because I move fast.



Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 She is great at (do – does – doing) math.
2 They are bad at (play – do – tennis).
3 A: Why are you good at swimming? B: (For – So – Because) I practice a lot.

Parents' tips
Help your child use "good at / great at, and bad at" correctly. ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم «جيد في.. / رائع في ... وغير جيد في» بطريقة صحيحة.

C Math

Adding and subtracting decimals جمع وطرح الكسور العشرية

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

- When you add or subtract decimals, treat them like whole numbers, but move the decimal point at the end so the position matches the numbers.

عندما نجمع الكسور العشرية أو نطرحها، تعامل معها كأرقام صحيحة، لكن حرك الفاصلة العشرية في النهاية بحيث يتطابق الموضع مع الأرقام.



e.g.

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.367\ + \\ 8.145 \\ \hline 10.512 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 10.512\ - \\ 8.145 \\ \hline 2.367 \end{array}$$

- The position of the decimal point has to match the position in the original numbers.

يجب أن يتطابق موضع الفاصلة العشرية مع موضع الأرقام الأصلية.



Note

- To get the total number we "**Add**"

e.g. Jihan ran 3.567 km on Sunday and 5.258 km on Tuesday. What is the total distance that Jihan ran?

3.567 + 5.258 = 8.825

- To get the difference, we "**Subtract**"

e.g. If one tree is 3.459 meters tall and another tree is 2.753 meters tall, what is the difference in height between both trees? SB

3.459 – 2.753 = 0.706

Check point

Circle the correct answer: ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 5.553 + 8.231 = (13. 784 – 1378.4)
2 60.678 – 50.356 = (103.220 – 10.322) SB
3 9.076 + 8.894 = (1.7970 – 17.970) SB





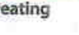


Parents' tips
Help your child add and subtract decimals correctly. ساعد طفلك أن يجمع ويطرح، الكسور العشرية بطريقة صحيحة.



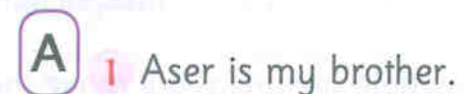

Lesson 2

12



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 4



A	B
1 Aser is my brother.	( ) 120.331
2 My sister's name is Salma.	( ) but I'm bad at speaking French.
3 123.651 – 3.320 =	( ) He is good at playing football.
4 I'm good at writing poems, ...	( ) She is good at doing math.

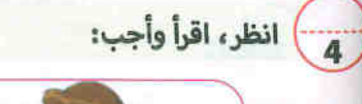
2 Circle the odd word out: ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة: 4

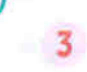


1. climb – cook – do – poems
2. make – good – bad – great
3. taekwondo – play – karate – kung fu
4. football – tennis – sailing – handball

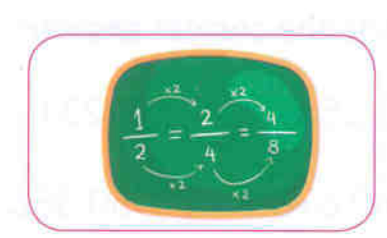
3 Look, read, and answer: انظر، اقرأ وأجب: 4

1. 
What are you good at?
....

2.  
Why are you good at football?
....



3. 
Why are you good at table tennis?
....

4. 
What are you bad at?
....

Parents' tips
(1) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
(2) Help your circle the odd word out. ساعد طفلك أن يضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة.
(3) Help your child answer the questions correctly ساعد طفلك أن يجيب عن الأسئلة بطريقة صحيحة.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 2



14


Listening



1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

move – tennis – handball – sport

A : Why are you good at table ....?
B : Because I can .... fast.
A : What .... are you bad at?
B : I'm bad at ....


Reading

2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4



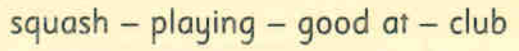

1. They are (good – bad – great) at tennis. They can't play it at all.
2. She's good at (write – wrote – writing) poems.
3. Reem is good (at – for – to) making cakes.
4. 7.983 + 5.432 = (13.415 – 134.15 – 12.551)


Writing

3 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 6



"Your favorite sport"



squash – playing – good at – club

....
....
....
....




Assess your progress ★★★★★




< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!






Lesson 3





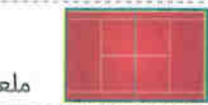
A Sports places and equipment

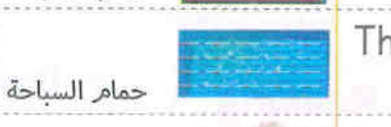
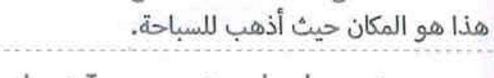


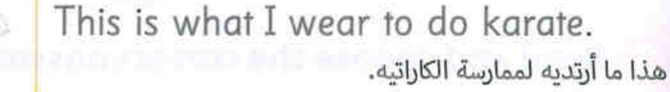

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



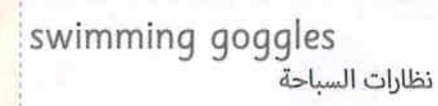
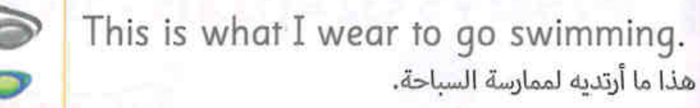
Definitions








	Word	Definition
Places	football pitch ملعب كرة القدم	This is where I play football. هذا هو المكان الذى ألعب فيه كرة القدم.
	tennis court ملعب تنس	This is where I play tennis. هذا هو المكان الذى ألعب فيه التنس.
	swimming pool حمام السباحة	This is where I go swimming. هذا هو المكان حيث أذهب للسباحة.
Equipment	karate suit بدلة الكاراتيه	This is what I wear to do karate. هذا ما أرتديه لممارسة الكاراتيه.
	football boots أحذية كرة القدم	This is what I wear to play football. هذا ما أرتديه لألعب كرة القدم.
	squash rackets مضارب الإسكواش	This is what I use to play squash. هذا ما أستخدمه لألعب الإسكواش.
	swimming goggles نظارات السباحة	This is what I wear to go swimming. هذا ما أرتديه لممارسة السباحة.
Sport	kung fu كونغ فو	This is when I do high kicks. It rhymes with "you" and "two". هذا عندما أفعل الركلات العالية. إنها تتناغم مع "أنت" و"اثنين".

Extra vocabulary

pitch ملعب	moves حركات	high (adj) عالٍ
kicks ركلات	court فناء (ملعب)	awesome (adj) رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
kick يركل	kicked	practice يتدرب	practiced

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the new words and let him/her say them correctly. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



I love my sport - kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.
أحب رياضتى - إن ركل الكرة فى الملعب هو الشىء المفضل لدى.



Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me. I feel like a different person.
التواجد فى حوض السباحة وممارسة هذه الرياضة هو أفضل شىء بالنسبة لى. أشعر وكأننى شخص مختلف.



I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best. My suit for this sport is white.
أحب الطريقة التى يمكننى بها القيام بالعديد من الحركات المختلفة. أنا أفضل الركلات العالية. البدلة التى أرتديها لممارسة تلك الرياضة بيضاء اللون.



I love this sport because I'm very good at it. You play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket, and you move very fast. You get really hot too.
أنا أحب تلك الرياضة لأننى جيد جدًا بها. أنت تلعب هذه الرياضة فى ملعب صغير محاط بالحوائط. يكون لديك مضرب صغير وتتحرك بسرعة كبيرة وتشعر بالحرارة أيضًا.



I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.
أعتقد أنها رياضة رائعة وأمارسها كثيرًا فى الصيف. لديهم ملاعب تنس فى الحديقة وأنا أذهب إلى هناك مع أصدقائى.

Vocabulary Check

لاحظ أن كلمة equipment لا تجمع.

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	We play football in the court.	( )	( )
2	When we play squash, we use rackets.	( )	( )
3	We wear goggles when we go swimming.	( )	( )

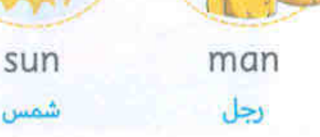
Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.
ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

B Pronunciation



Listen, say, and notice: استمع ، قل ولاحظ:

1. Single syllable words: كلمات ذات مقطع لفظي واحد:






sun	man	sock	pen	cat	red
شمس	رجل	فردة جورب (شراب)	قلم جاف	قطة	أحمر

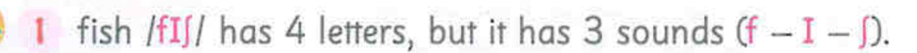
2. Counting sounds in a single syllable word: عد الأصوات فى كلمة ذات مقطع لفظي واحد:

When we pronounce a word, we don't say the letters, but we say the sounds.
The sounds that we get out of our mouths are what we count.

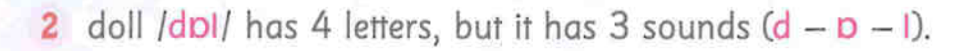
عندما نلفظ كلمة، لا نقول الحروف، لكننا نقول الأصوات. الأصوات التى نخرجها من أفواهنا هى ما نعده.



e.g.

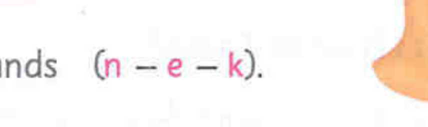



1 fish /fɪʃ/ has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (f – ɪ – ʃ).




2 doll /dɒl/ has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (d – ɒ – l).

3 full /fʊl/ has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (f – ʊ – l).



4 neck /nek/ has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (n – e – k).

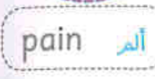
3. Long vowels: الحروف المتحركة الممدودة:

Vowel sounds which are pronounced the same way as the name of the letter itself.
For example, the long U sound is pronounced like "yoo".

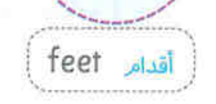
يتم نطق أصوات الحروف المتحركة بنفس طريقة نطق اسم الحرف نفسه. على سبيل المثال، يتم نطق صوت U الطويل مثل "yoo".



Long vowels










/eɪ/	/iː/	/aɪ/	/əʊ/	/uː/
pain ألم	tea شاى	light ضوء	rose وردة	two اثنان
make يصنع	feet أقدام	cry يبكى	cone مخروط	fuel وقود
				cube مكعب

4. Counting sounds in two-syllable words: عد الأصوات بكلمات ذات مقطعين:

A syllable is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

المقطع اللفظى هو جزء من كلمة تحتوى على صوت واحد متحرك.

e.g.

spi + der = spider عنكبوت	teach + er= teacher مدرس	ro + bot = robot إنسان آلى	pa + per = paper ورقة	ba + by = baby طفل
de + lete = delete يمسح	win + dow = window نافذة	rea + son = reason سبب	hu + man = human إنسان	ti + ger = tiger نمر
fi + nal = final نهائى	ho + tel = hotel فندق	mu + sic = music موسيقى	E + gypt = Egypt مصر	pol + lute = pollute يلوث

Check point

Listen and write: استمع واكتب:

Is it single syllable or two syllables?

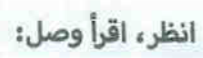
1 cup .... 2 baby .... 3 tiger ....

Parents' tips
Help your child differentiate between short and long vowels correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يميز بين الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والطويلة بطريقة صحيحة.




Lesson 3

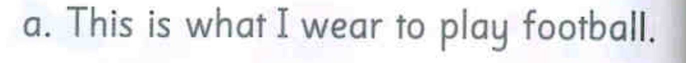
12


• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Look, read, and match: انظر، اقرأ وصل: 4



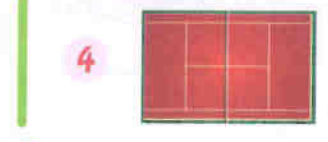


1 

a. This is what I wear to play football.

2 

b. This is what I wear to go swimming.

3 

c. This is where I play tennis.

4

d. This is what I use to play squash.





2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1 When you play squash, you hit the ball with a small (pitch – boot – racket).

2 My (court – ball – suit) for karate is white.

3 There are (2 – 3 – 4) syllables in the word "spider".

4 I wear my football boots and kick the ball on the football (court – pitch – goggle).

3 Match the syllables to make the words: صل المقاطع لتكوين الكلمات: 4



1 win	a. tel
2 hu	b. dow
3 ho	c. lete
4 de	d. man

Parents' tips
(1) Help your read and match.
(2) Help your child choose the correct answer.
(3) Help your child match the syllables.

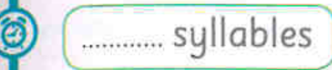
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يقوم بتوصيل المقاطع.



TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 3




12




Listening



1 Listen and count the syllables in each word: استمع وعد المقاطع في كل كلمة: 4



1 window	2 robot	3 man	4 hotel
.... syllables	.... syllables	.... syllables	.... syllables

Reading



2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 4

A

1 Kung fu is ...
2 Karate suit is ...
3 Football pitch is ...
4 Squash rackets are ...

B

( ) what I use to play squash.
( ) where I play football.
( ) when I do high kicks.
( ) what I wear to do karate.

Writing



3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4



1 boots – I – to – football – wear – play.

....

2 kicks – the best – I – high – like.

....

3 karate – white – My – is – suit – for.

....

4 favorite – What's – sport – your?

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!







Lesson 4
Story







Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

toxic (adj.)	سام	air freshener	معطر جو	emissions	عوادم
acid	حامض	shade	ظل	greenhouse	صوبة زراعية
nightmare	كابوس				

Extra vocabulary

traffic	حركة المرور	dangerous (adj.)	خطير	breathing	التنفس
grass	عشب/حشائش	lovely (adj.)	جميل/رائع	dirty (adj.)	متسخ
awful (adj.)	قبيح	dream	حلم	planet	كوكب
gases	غازات	factories	مصانع	chemicals	مواد كيماوية
asleep (adj.)	نائم	horrible (adj.)	مريع		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
smell	يشم	smelled	stay	يمكث	stayed
remember	يتذكر	remembered	wait	ينتظر	waited
use	يستخدم	used	plant	يزرع	planted

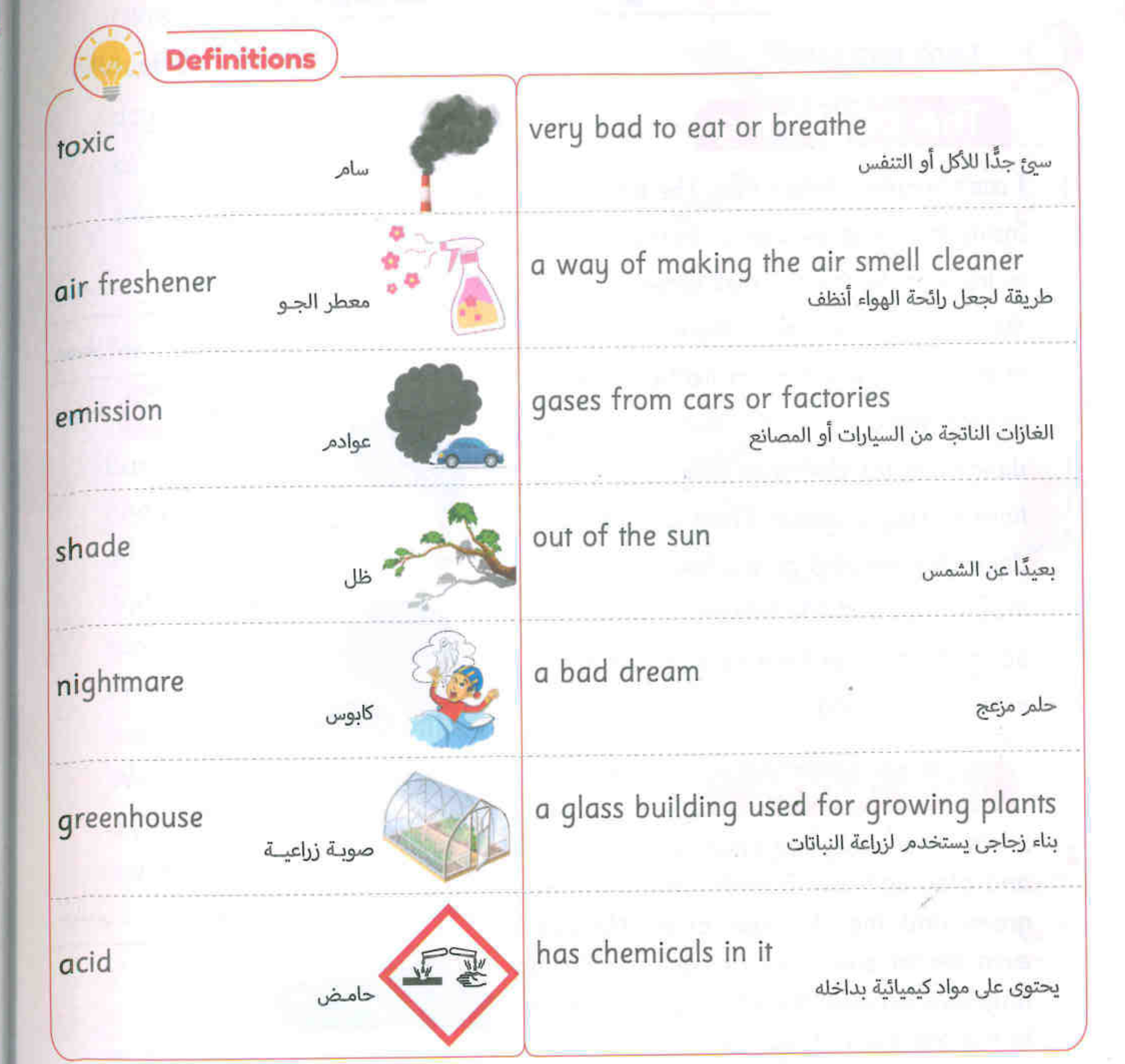
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew	fall	يسقط	fell
sit	يجلس	sat	keep	يبقى/يحافظ على	kept

Expressions and Phrases

smell better	تصدر منه رائحة أفضل	have to	يضطر إلى	cut down	يقطع
it's time to ...	حان الوقت لـ ...	get ready for	يستعد لـ	look after	يعتني بـ
out of	بعيدًا عن	used for	يُستخدم لـ	wake up	يستيقظ

Definitions



toxic	سام	very bad to eat or breathe سيئ جدًا للأكل أو التنفس
air freshener	معطر الجو	a way of making the air smell cleaner طريقة لجعل رائحة الهواء أنظف
emission	عوادم	gases from cars or factories الغازات الناتجة من السيارات أو المصانع
shade	ظل	out of the sun بعيدًا عن الشمس
nightmare	كابوس	a bad dream حلم مزعج
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية	a glass building used for growing plants بناء زجاجي يستخدم لزراعة النباتات
acid	حامض	has chemicals in it يحتوي على مواد كيميائية بداخله

Vocabulary Check

بعض الأسماء يتم تكوينها بإضافة (اسم + اسم).

e.g. night + mare = nightmare
green + house = greenhouse

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the new words and let him/her say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.

An Awful Nightmare! كابوس مخيف!

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

1 I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and toxic [1]. Inside the house we use air fresheners[2] to try to make the air smell better. We can't go outside - there are too many cars and too much traffic. There are too many emissions[3] from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his breathing.



(1) سام
(2) معطر الجو
(3) عوادم

The middle

2 I remember when we could go to the park and play with our friends - the grass was green and the sky was blue. We could even see the sun. Now we can't see the sun anymore because the sky is gray or black. In the old days, it was lovely to have rain after a very hot day, but now the rain is acid[4] and when it falls we can't go out. I remember going on holiday and playing on the beach with my family. We swam in the sea, but now we can't swim in the sea because there's too much plastic in it, and it is dirty.





(4) حامض

الترجمة:

- لا أستطيع التنفس، أعرف ذلك. الهواء أسود وسام. داخل المنزل نستخدم معطرات الجو لمحاولة تحسين رائحة الهو اء. لا يمكننا الخروج - فهناك الكثير من السيارات وحركة المرور. هناك الكثير من عوادم السيارات. إنه خطر على رئتي الأطفال وعلينا البقاء في المنزل. هناك عدة أيام لا يمكننا فيها الذهاب إلى المدرسة لأن الهواء سيئ للغاية. اضطر أخي الصغير للذهاب إلى المستشفى بسبب مشاكل في التنفس.
- أتذكر عندما كان بإمكاننا الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائنا - كان العشب أخضر والسماء زرقاء، يمكننا حتى رؤية الشمس. الآن لا يمكننا رؤية الشمس لأن السماء يكون لونها رمادياً أو أسود. في الماضي، كان من الجميل أن تهطل الأمطار بعد يوم شديد الحرارة، لكن المطر الآن حمضي وعندما يسقط لا يمكننا الخروج. أتذكر الذهاب في عطلة واللعب على الشاطئ مع عائلتي. سبحنا في البحر، لكننا الآن لا نستطيع السباحة في البحر لأن هناك الكثير من البلاستيك فيه وهو متسخ.

Other things I remember are eating fruit from trees and sitting in their shade[5] on hot days. But now they cut down all the trees, so we only have fruit from greenhouses[6] and we can't sit outside any more.





(5) ظل
(6) الصوبات الزراعية

The end

3 But wait, what's that? It's my mom calling and it's time to get ready for school! It was all an awful nightmare![7]. I look outside and the sky is blue and I can see the sun. We're going to the park today. But I remember my dream and I know in my heart we need to look after our planet. We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more, plant trees, and keep our sea clean, but we must work hard at this!



(7) كابوس

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	Emissions from cars are dangerous for children's lungs.	( )	( )
2	We can't see the sun because it's gray or black.	( )	( )
3	It was all a nightmare.	( )	( )

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

- أشياء أخرى أتذكرها هي أكل الفاكهة من الأشجار والجلوس في ظلها في الأيام الحارة. لكنهم الآن يقطعون كل الأشجار بحيث لا نمتلك سوى الفاكهة من الصوبات ولا يمكننا الجلوس في الخارج بعد الآن.
- لكن مهلاً، ما هذا؟ إنها والدتي تنادي وحان وقت الاستعداد للمدرسة! كان كل ذلك كابوساً مخيفاً أنظر إلى الخارج والسماء زرقاء وأستطيع رؤية الشمس. سنذهب إلى الحديقة اليوم. لكني أتذكر حلمي وأعلم في قلبي أننا بحاجة إلى الاعتناء بكوكبنا. يمكننا أن نقود سياراتنا أقل، ونستخدم دراجاتنا أكثر، ونزرع الأشجار، ونحافظ على نظافة بحرنا، لكن يجب أن نعمل بجد في ذلك.



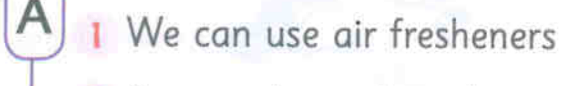

Lesson 4

12

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل

4



A	B
1 We can use air fresheners	( ) a bad dream.
2 A green house is a glass building	( ) very bad to eat or breathe.
3 Nightmare is	( ) to make the air smell cleaner.
4 Toxic means	( ) used for growing plants.




2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4



1. (Emissions – Fresheners – Acids) are gases from cars or factories.
2. When the (clean – acid – clear) rain falls, we can't go outside.
3. Mom uses air (emissions – chemicals – fresheners) to make the air smell cleaner.
4. A greenhouse is a glass building used for growing (plants – animals – children).

3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

4



1. air – dangerous – Polluted – is – lungs – children's – for.
....
2. are – What – greenhouses – used – for?
....
3. look – our planet – We – to – need – after.
....
4. use – fresheners – inside – We – air – house – the.
....



Parents' tips
(1) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل.
(2) Help your child choose the correct words. ساعد طفلك أن يختار الكلمات الصحيحة.
(3) Help your child re-arrange to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.



TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 4



14

Listening

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

4

less – look – pollution – Emissions

Sara : How can air .... affect our health?
Hany : .... from cars and factories can be dangerous for our lungs.
Sara : How can we .... after our planet?
Hany : We should use our cars .... and use our bikes more.



Reading

2 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

5

Pollution is very harmful to our world. Imagine our life in the future, there would be emissions from cars. There would be many children in hospitals because of problems with breathing. We couldn't swim in the sea that it would be full of plastic trash! Even the trees would be cut down. There would be greenhouses so we can grow plants.

A Choose the correct word:

1. Pollution is (good – bad – important) for our world.
2. There would be (emissions – hospitals – plastic trash) in the air.
3. When there aren't any trees, we can grow plants in the (greenhouses – white houses – yellow houses).

B Answer the following questions:

4. Why would many children be in hospitals? ....
5. How would the sea be in the future? ....



Writing

3 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة:

5

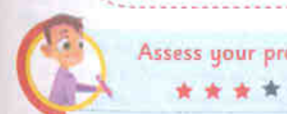


"Pollution"

emissions – toxic – rain – greenhouses

....
....
....
....





Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



STUDY



Lesson 5

Writing



Sports Biography



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



1 Hedaya Malak is a famous(1) Egyptian taekwondo player(2). She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games(3) in 2021. This is a great honor(4).

2 Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes(5) at the age of 14. Hedaya won many important awards. She won the bronze medal(6) at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

3 Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped a Moroccan athlete(7) with special needs(8), Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete against, so Hedaya became her competitor(9) and lost. Raja could therefore win the gold medal(10) and it was a very special moment for her.

4 What does the future hold for Hedaya? She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!

(1)	مشهور
(2)	لاعب
(3)	ألعاب أولمبية
(4)	شرف / فخر
(5)	جوائز
(6)	ميدالية برونزية
(7)	لاعب رياضي
(8)	قدرات خاصة
(9)	منافس
(10)	ميدالية ذهبية

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

الترجمة:

1- هداية ملاك لاعبة تايكوندو مصرية شهيرة. هى واحدة من الاثنين اللذين رفعا العلم المصرى فى الألعاب الأوليمبية بطوكيو فى عام 2021 . هذا فخر عظيم.

2- ولدت هداية فى الحادى والعشرين من شهر إبريل لسنة 1993. بدأت فى ممارسة لعبة التايكوندو فى السابعة من عمرها وحصلت على العديد من الجوائز فى الرابعة عشرة من عمرها. حصلت هداية على العديد من الجوائز . فازت بالميدالية البرونزية فى أولمبياد ريو فى عام 2016. وفازت أيضًا بالميدالية البرونزية فى طوكيو لعام 2021.

3- هداية شخصية طيبة للغاية . فى عام 2016 ساعدت لاعبة مغربية ذات قدرات خاصة. تدعى راجا جارماش . لا يوجد أى شخص للمنافسة ضد راجا، فأصبحت هداية المنافس ضدها وخسرت. لذلك فازت راجا بميدالية ذهبية وكانت بالنسبة لها مناسبة خاصة جدًا .

4- ماذا يخبئ المستقبل لهداية؟ هى تتدرب بجد وتريد فعلًا أن تفوز بميدالية ذهبية.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

How to write a sports biography

A Introduce the person, giving their name.

قدِّم الشخص مع ذكر اسمه.

e.g. Hedaya Malak is ....

B Say why they are famous and give details about their sport.

قل سبب شهرتهم وقدم تفاصيل عن رياضتهم.

e.g. (won many prizes - 2016 Rio Olympics - the bronze medal)

C Give more details about their success and why they are interesting.

قدم مزيدًا من التفاصيل حول نجاحهم ولماذا هم مثيرون للاهتمام.

e.g. very kind - caring

D Say what you think could happen next for their career.

قل ما تعتقد أنه يمكن أن يحدث بعد ذلك في حياتهم المهنية.

e.g. a new coach - practice hard - win a gold medal

E Review the spelling and punctuation marks.

راجع الهجاء وعلامات الترقيم.

Look and write a sports biography:

athelete – medals – complete – future

Sherif Osman, Paralympic champion



....

....

....

....

....

....

Parents' tips

Help your child read and notice how to write a sports biography.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ليلاحظ كيف يمكننا كتابة سيرة ذاتية لشخص رياضي.

STUDY



Lesson 6

Project



A less polluted city



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Steps to make a presentation: خطوات تقديم عرض تقديمى:

1. Describe the problems in detail.
   قم بوصف المشكلة بالتفصيل.
2. Think about what causes the problem and make a list.
   فكر ما هو سبب المشكلة واذكره.
3. Think about possible solutions.
   فكر فى حلول ممكنة.
4. Do some drawings, stick some photos and write the text.
   قم برسم بعض المخططات، ألصق بعض الصور ثم اكتب النص.
5. Present your information, as a poster, or as a PowerPoint presentation.
   اعرض معلوماتك فى شكل ملصق أو عرض تقديمى.
6. Use these phrases:
   استخدم العبارات الآتية:

Today we're going to talk about ... / First we're going to tell you about ... /
Next we will mention ... / Then we will finish, and have some time for questions.

اليوم سوف نتحدث عن..../ أولًا سوف نقوم بإخبارك عن ....../ بعد ذلك سوف نذكر ...../ فى النهاية، هناك بعض الوقت للأسئلة.

Water pollution

When harmful(1) chemicals(2) go into water bodies(3) like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution.



Water pollution(4) can kill organisms(5) that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs(6). It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats(7).

(1) ضار
(2) مواد كيميائية
(3) مجارٍ مائية
(4) التلوث المائى
(5) الكائنات الحية
(6) كابوريا
(7) أماكن المعيشة

الترجمة:
عندما تتسرب المواد الكيميائية الضارة إلى المجارى المائية مثل: الأنهار والبحيرات والبحار، يطلق على هذه الظاهرة التلوث المائى.
التلوث المائى بإمكانه قتل الكائنات الحية التى تعيش فى الماء مثل: السمك والطيور والكابوريا.
وبإمكانها أيضًا قتل الطيور التى تتغذى على السمك . التلوث المائى بامكانه أن يجعل الحيوانات تغادر بيوتها وتغير أماكن معيشتها.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ :

Causes الأسباب	Effects تأثيرات	Solutions حلول
• Wastewater from sinks, toilets and showers. المياه العادمة من الأحواض والمراحيض والاستحمام. • Wastewater and chemicals from factories. مياه الصرف الصحى والمواد الكيماوية من المصانع. • Wastewater from agricultural land and cities into rivers. المياه العادمة من الأراضى الزراعية والمدن فى الأنهار.	• Dirty water can make children and old people ill. المياه القذرة يمكن أن تصيب الأطفال وكبار السن بالمرض. • Polluted water destroys wildlife in rivers. المياه الملوثة تدمر الحياة البرية فى الأنهار.	• Save as much water as possible. وفر أكبر قدر ممكن من الماء. • Take shorter showers. الاستحمام أقصر. • Avoid running water. تجنب المياه الجارية. • Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach. لا تقم مطلقًا بإلقاء القمامة فى بحيرة أو شاطئ أو بالقرب منهما.
		

Parents' tips
Help your child read the causes, effects, and solutions of water pollution correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ اسباب، تأثيرات وحلول تلوث المياه بطريقة صحيحة.



Vocabulary



kung fu tennis sailing



swimming squash karate

football handball

Language Focus

1. be (am/is/are) + good / bad / great + at (verb + ing).

e.g. I'm very good at drawing.



2. be (am/is/are) + good / bad / great + at + noun.

e.g. I'm very good at handball.

Pronunciation

1. Single syllable words:

sun man sock pen cat red

2. Counting sounds in a single syllable word:

When we pronounce a word, we don't say the letters, but we say the sounds.
The sounds that we get out of our mouths are what we count.

e.g.
1. fish /fɪʃ/ has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (f – ɪ – ʃ).
2. doll /dɒl/ has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (d – ɒ – l).
3. full /fʊl/ has 4 letters, but 3 sounds (f – ʊ – l).
4. neck /nek/ has 4 letters, but 3 sounds (n – e – k).

3. Counting sounds in two-syllable words:

spi + der = spider	teach + er = teacher	ro + bot = robot	pa + per = paper	ba + by = baby
de + lete = delete	win + dow = window	rea + son = reason	hu + man = human	ti + ger = tiger
fi + nal = final	ho + tel = hotel	mu + sic = music	E + gypt = Egypt	pol + lute = pollute

Math

Adding and subtracting decimals:

When we add or subtract decimals, treat them like whole numbers, but move the decimal point at the end so the position matches the numbers.

e.g.

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.367 + \\ 8.145 \\ \hline 10.512 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 10.512 - \\ 8.145 \\ \hline 2.367 \end{array}$$



Lesson 1

تنس	....	كونغ فو	....	كرة القدم	....
كاراتيه	....	إسكواش	....	إبحار	....
رائع	....	رياضات	....	كرة يد	....

Lesson 2



يمشى عبر الصحراء	....	يحل الصور المتقطعة	....
يطبخ	....	يتسلق الأشجار	....
يحل المسائل الحسابية	....	يصنع الكعك	....
يساعد فى المطبخ	....	يكتب قصائد	....

Lesson 3

ملعب كرة القدم	....	مضارب الإسكواش	....
بدلة الكاراتيه	....	نظارات السباحة	....
ملعب تنس	....	ملعب	....
حمام السباحة	....	ركلات	....
أحذية كرة القدم	....	كرة تنس	....
رجل	....	فردة جورب (شراب)	....
قطة	....	شمس	....
قبعة	....	قلم جاف	....

Lesson 4

سام	....	ظل	....
معطر جو	....	كابوس	....
عوادم	....	صوبة زراعية	....
حامض	....	مخيف	....



WRITING TIME

Check your writing

 Start the sentence with a "capital letter" and end it with a "period".

 Check your spelling and punctuation marks.

 **Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words:** انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة:

"Squash "

favorite – walls – racket – good



Squash is my favorite sport. I play it on a small court with walls all around. I have a small racket that I use to hit the ball hard. I am really good at playing squash because I can move fast.

"What you are good and bad at"

name – tennis – club – handball



My name is Marwan. I'm eleven years old. I love playing sports. I'm good at tennis. I go to the club every Friday to play tennis. I'm bad at handball. I never win.

"Air pollution"

dangerous – emissions – stop – plant trees



Air pollution is very dangerous to our bodies. We can't breathe polluted air. Emissions from factories and cars are dangerous to our lungs. We should stop air pollution. We should plant more trees. We should use more bikes.

"Hedaya Malak"

player – kind – practice – gold



Hedaya Malak is an Egyptian taekwondo player. She won a bronze medal in Tokyo 2021. She is a very kind person. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs to win the gold medal. She is practicing hard to win a gold medal.

 **Listening** 

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:  2

court – sport – play – tennis

A : What .... are you good at?
B : I am good at playing ....
A : Where do you often .... ?
B : I play it in the tennis ....

 **Reading**

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 5

A	B
1 A: What sports do you watch on TV?	( ) two bronze medals.
2 I'm good at tennis,...	( ) in the word "doll".
3 Cars and factories emissions	( ) but I'm better at football.
4 Hedaya Malak won ...	( ) B: I watch karate and kung fu.
5 There are 3 sounds ...	( ) can cause air pollution.

3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 5

medal – seven – player – flag – awards

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo .... She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian..................... at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of .... She won many .... She won the bronze .... in Tokyo 2021.

4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Rami, Hana, Ahmed, and Amira like sports. Rami likes karate as he can do a lot of moves. He likes high kicks the best. Hana likes to swim. She goes to the swimming pool two times every week. Ahmed plays football on the pitch. His team always wins. Amira is a good squash player. Her racket is white and blue. They are all good players and one day they will win gold medals.

A **Tick (True) or (False):**

	True	False
1 Hana is a karate player.	( )	( )
2 Ahmed plays football in a team.	( )	( )
3 Amira's squash racket is white and blue.	( )	( )

B **Answer the following questions:**

4 What does Rami like?

....

5 Where does Ahmed play football with his team?

....

Writing

5 **Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences:** اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 5

1 wants – medal – Hedaya Malak – win – a gold - to.

....

2 bad – A nightmare – dream – a – is.

....

3 on a – We – football – play – pitch – football.

....

4 wear – goggles – swimming – We – to – go.

....

5 the – karate – What's – color – of – your – suit?

....

6 **Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words:** انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5

"My favorite sport"

football – pitch – practice – good

....

....

....

....

7 **Punctuate the following sentences:** ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 3

1 hana and adel like sports

....

2 what sports do we have in egypt

....





UNIT 2 AL ADWAA TEST 2 30





Listening

1 **Listen and complete:** استمع وأكمل: 2

good – winning – watching – match

A : What are you ....?

B : An old squash ....

A : Who's ....?

B : Raneem El Weleily. She's very .... at playing squash.



Reading

2 **Read and match:** اقرأ وصل: 5

A	B
1 I'm very good at tennis, ...	( ) making the air smell cleaner.
2 A: What is the most popular sport in Egypt?	( ) we go swimming.
3 Air freshener is used for ...	( ) when I do karate.
4 I wear my white suit	( ) but I'm bad at playing handball.
5 We use goggles when ...	( ) B: Football.





3 **Read and choose the correct answer:** اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 5

1 Reem is (good – bad – great) at drawing. She doesn't like it.

2 He is very good at (playing – doing – going) karate.

3 Amir is using his swimming (goggles – rackets – ball) in the swimming pool.

4 In (tennis – handball – kung fu), we do high kicks.

5 "(Acid – Greenhouse – Toxic)" means very bad to eat or breathe.



4 **Read the passage and then answer the questions:** اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Hedaya Malak is a very important Egyptian athlete. She was born on April 21, 1993. She started practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is a great honor. She won many awards. She won the bronze medal at Rio Olympics in 2016 and in Tokyo in 2021. All Egyptians are proud* of Hedaya Malak. She really wants to win a gold medal.

*فخور

A **Choose the correct word:**

1 Hedaya Malak is a/an (Japanese - Egyptian – French) athlete.

2 She began practicing taekwondo at the age of (10 – 7 – 15).

3 Hedaya won the (gold – silver – bronze) medal at the Rio Olympics.

B **Answer the following questions:**

4 When was Hedaya born?

....

5 What does Hedaya really want?

....



Writing

5 **Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences:** اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: **5**

1 children's – Emissions – lungs – are – for – dangerous.

....

2 more – should – We – trees – plant.

....

3 on – tennis – a court – We – play.

....

4 playing – good – tennis – I'm – at – very.

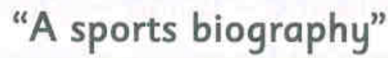
....

5 in – What – Egypt – have – sports – do – we?

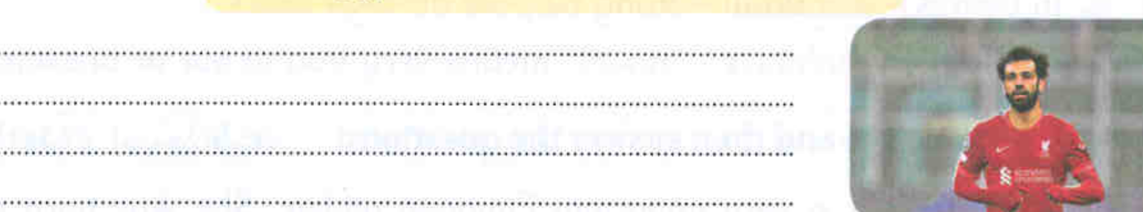
....

6 **Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words:** انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: **5**

"A sports biography"



Egyptian – football – win – kind



7 **Punctuate the following sentences:** ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: **3**

1 I m good at reading arabic

....

2 hedaya malak is a very important egyptian athlete.

....






Unit 3 How do I look?

كيف أبدو؟



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to: بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
- listen, read, research, and write about different types of clothes. - يستمع، ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الملابس.
- listen to a conversation about packing for a vacation. - يستمع إلى محادثة عن حزم الأمتعة لقضاء عطلة.
- learn about the geography of Egypt. - يتعلم عن جغرافيا مصر.
- practice using the infinitive of purpose. - يتدرب على استخدام المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض.
- read a traditional folktale. - يقرأ قصة خيالية من التراث التقليدي.
- learn how to say past simple endings /d/, /t/, and /ɪd/. - يتعلم كيف يقول الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ /d/ ، /t/ ، و /ɪd/ في زمن الماضي البسيط.
- multiply multi-digit numbers. - يقوم بعملية الضرب للأرقام متعددة الخانات.
- write a description of favorite clothes using adjectives. - يكتب وصف الملابس المفضلة مستخدمًا الصفات.
- research and make a leaflet about traditional clothes around the world. - يقوم بالبحث لعمل منشور عن الملابس التقليدية حول العالم.

Life skills

- Respect for diversity. - احترام التنوع.

Values

- **Mercy:** Talking about why people help others. - **الرحمة:** التحدث عن لماذا يساعد الناس بعضهم بعضًا.
- Appreciating differences. - تقدير الاختلاف.

Issues and challenges

- **Non-discrimination:** Traditional clothing from around the world. - عدم العنصرية: الأزياء التقليدية من حول العالم.

Warm up

Unit three is about different types of clothes and packing for a vacation.

It is also about the unique geography of Egypt and a traditional folktale.

Did you know?

Cotton grows in the Nile Delta. Many people believe that Egyptian cotton is the best cotton in the world.



I can find it out!

Cotton grows so well in Egypt because of Egypt's fertile* soil and moderate* climate, which are ideal* for the growth of extra-long staple* cotton.



الترجمة:

- تتحدث الوحده الثالثة عن أنواع مختلفة من الملابس وحزم الأمتعة لقضاء عطلة. إنها أيضًا عن جغرافيا مصر الفريدة والحكاية الشعبية التقليدية.
- ينمو القطن فى دلتا النيل. يعتقد الكثير من الناس أن القطن المصرى هو أفضل قطن فى العالم.
- ينمو القطن جيدًا فى مصر بسبب التربة الخصبة فى مصر والمناخ المعتدل الذى يعتبر مثاليًا لنمو القطن طويل التيلة.

fertile خصبة	moderate معتدل	ideal مثاليًا	staple التيلة





Main vocabulary



Listen, point, and say: 



T-shirt
تيشرت



sunglasses
نظارات شمسية



swimming shorts
شورت سباحة



scarf
كوفية



sweater
قميص صوفى



sneakers
حذاء رياضى



necklace
عقد



pajamas
بيجامة



spotted
منقط



stripped
مخطط



- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (sh) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش) كما فى (T-shirt).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (tt) فى كلمة (spotted) ينطقان كحرف واحد.
- لاحظ أن حرف ال (c) ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (e - i - y) كما فى (necklace).

Extra vocabulary

suitcases	حقائب	holiday	إجازة	excited (adj.)	متحمس
lovely (adj.)	رائع	pool	حمام سباحة	feet	أقدام
favorite (adj.)	مفضل	comfortable (adj.)	مريح	galabeya	جلابية
gold (adj.)	لون ذهبى/مصنوع من الذهب	really	حقًا	stripes	خطوط

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed	pack	يحزم	packed
wait	ينتظر	waited	remember	يتذكر	remembered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	see	يرى	saw
know	يعرف	knew	have	يملك	had
come	يأتى	came	wear	يرتدى	wore
give	يعطى	gave	take	يأخذ	took

Expressions and Phrases

I can't wait	لا أطيق (أتحمل) الانتظار	of course	بالتأكيد / بالطبع
for ages	منذ زمن طويل	come on	هيا بنا
walk around	يتجول	man-made	من صنع الإنسان

Vocabulary Check

- "Spotted" clothes have dots all over them. - الملابس "المنقطة" عليها نقاط فى كل مكان.
- "Stripped" clothes have lines all over them.
- الملابس "المخططة" عليها خطوط فى كل مكان.





I can find it out!

Pearls come from a living sea creature: the oyster.
There're two general types of pearls: natural or man-made.



تأتى اللآلئ من كائن بحرى حى: المحار. هناك نوعان من اللآلئ: لآلئ طبيعيه أو لآلئ من صنع الإنسان.



Check point

Look and write: انظر واكتب:

1 ....

2  ....

3  ....

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Mom: Aser, we need to pack our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.
آسر، نحتاج أن نحزم حقائبنا من أجل إجازتنا غدًا.



Aser: It's so exciting! I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. And, of course, Faris and Dina.
إنـه مثيـر للغايـة! لا أطيـق الانتظـار للذهـاب إلـى الفيـوم لرؤيـة العـم حاتـم والعمّـة ملـك. وبالطبـع فـارس وديـنـا.





Mom: I know. I'm excited to see them, too. We haven't seen them for ages! But come on, we need to pack!
أنا أعرف. أنا متحمسة لرؤيتهم أيضًا. لم نرهم منذ زمن طويل! لكن هيا بنا، نحن بحاجة إلى حزم حقائبنا!



Aser: OK, I need to pack my green T-shirt and my swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool, don't they?
حسنًا ، أريد أن أحزم التيشيرت الأخضر الخاص بى وشورت السباحة لأن لديهم مسبحًا جميلًا، أليس كذلك؟





Mom: Yes, and remember your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.
نعم ، وتذكر نظارتك الشمسية. سيكون الجو مشمسًا جدًّا.



Aser: Will I need a coat and a scarf?



هل سأحتاج إلى معطف وكوفية؟



Mom No, Aser, you won't. But you should pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

لا يا آسر. لكن يجب أن تحزم قميصًا صوفيًا. يمكن أن يكون الجو باردًا فى المساء.



Aser OK. I'll pack my blue sweater. That's my favorite.

نعم. سأحزم قميصى الصوفى الأزرق. هذا هو المفضل لدى.



Mom You'll need your sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot and you need to wear something comfortable on your feet.

ستحتاج إلى حذائك الرياضى لأننا ستجول كثيرًا وتحتاج أن ترتدى شيئًا مريحًا فى قدميك.



Aser What about my best galabeya? Will I need the one that Grandma gave me?

ماذا عن أفضل جلابية لدى؟ هل سأحتاج إلى تلك الجلابية التى أعطتها لى الجدة؟



Mom No, you won't. But I will take my gold necklace.

لا ، لكننى سآخذ قلادتى الذهبية.





Aser Hmm. OK. What else do I need? Oh, I know! My pajamas! I'll take the ones with the stripes. They're really cool!

همم. نعم. ماذا أحتاج أيضًا؟ آه أنا أعرف! بيجامتى! سآخذ تلك التى بها خطوط. إنها حقًا رائعة!

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code, and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

Language Functions

1 Expressing necessity: التعبير عن الضرورة:

I/We/You/They + need to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....
He/She/It + needs to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g. He needs to pack his suitcase.

2 Talking about future events: الحديث عن الأحداث المستقبلية:

will ('ll) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g. I'll pack my blue sweater.

3 Giving advice: إعطاء النصيحة:

Subject + should + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g. You should pack a sweater.

Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 We need to (pack – packed – packing) our suitcases for our holiday.
2 We (should – shouldn't – can't) take our coats. It's cold outside.
3 I ('ll pack – packs – packing) my blue sweater. It can be cool at night.





Lesson 1

10

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 4

A	B
1 A: What are you doing?	( ) B: Yes, he will.
2 Remember your sunglasses.	( ) B: I'm packing my suitcase.
3 Take your sweater.	( ) It will be very sunny.
4 A: Will he need his glasses?	( ) It will be cool in the evenings.

2 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 4

1 wait – to – Al Fayoum – I – go – can't – to.

....

2 Amr – his – Will – sneakers – need?

....

3 pack – coat – your – should – You.

....

4 her – will – Mona – gold – take – necklace.

....

3 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 2

1 i ll pack my blue sweater

....

2 I can t wait to go to cairo tomorrow

....

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
(2) Help your child re-arrange to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentence or question. ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة أو السؤال المعطى.



TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 1



13



Listening

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

suitcase – will – pajamas – doing

Hala : What are you .... ?
Mona : I'm packing my ....
Hala : Will you need to pack your ....?
Mona : Yes, I ....



Reading

2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1 There's a pool in the club. Take your (pajamas – swimming shorts – scarf).
2 You (should – have – want) take your sunglasses. It will be sunny.
3 I'll (take – takes – taking) my golden necklace.
4 It will be cool at night. You'll need a (sunglasses – sweater – sneakers).



Writing

3 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5

"Our trip to Alexandria"

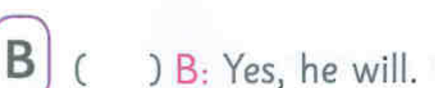
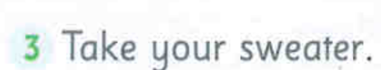
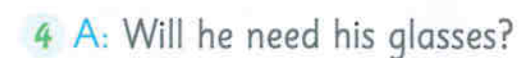
pack – sunglasses – hot – pajamas

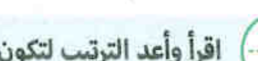
....
....
....
....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

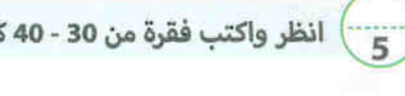
















Lesson 2
Geography



A Natural features



Main vocabulary



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:


mountain جبل


glacier نهر جليدي


river نهر


flood فيضان


rainforest غابة استوائية


desert صحراء


waterfalls شلالات


sand dunes الكثبان الرملية

Extra vocabulary

through	عبر/خلال	until	حتى	Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط
north	شمال	capital	عاصمة	modern (adj.)	حديث
Lower Egypt	الوجه البحرى	west	غرب	south	جنوب
east	شرق	coast	ساحل	Fayoum Depression	منخفض الفيوم
oasis	واحة	huge (adj.)	ضخم	fossils	حفريات
whales	حيتان	lake	بحيرة	amazing (adj.)	مذهل
sights	مناظر/معالم سياحية				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

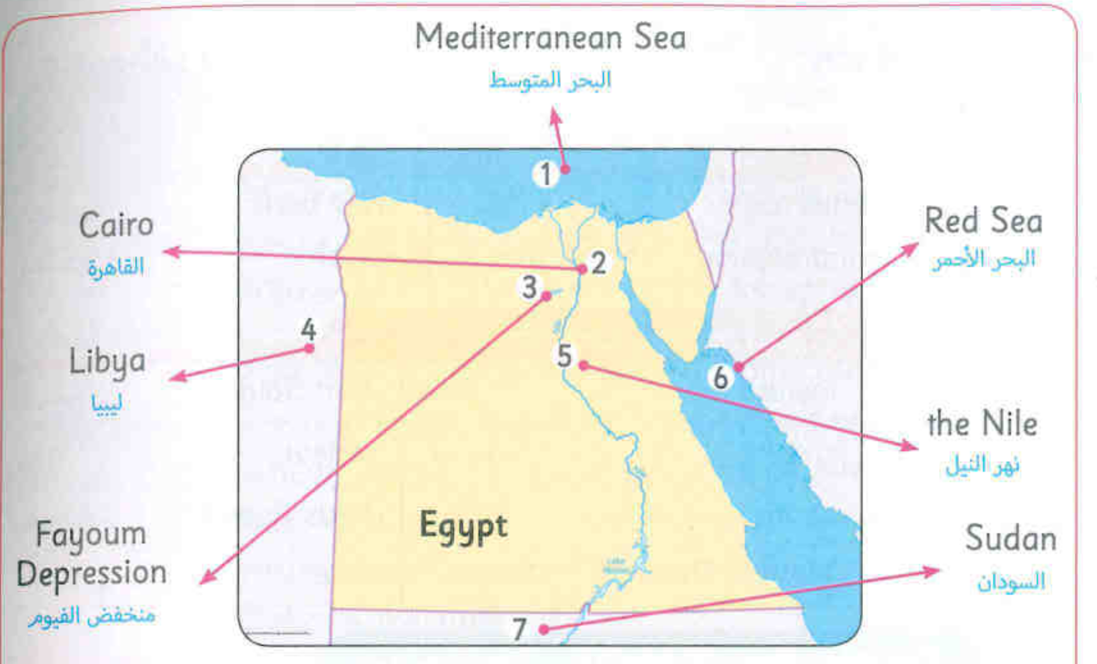
Regular verbs		أفعـــال منتظمـة
Present		Past
reach	يصل	reached

Expressions and Phrases

lie to	يقع إلى	lie on	يقع على	home to	موطن لـ

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the new words and let him/her say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Egypt is a very beautiful country. The Nile runs through[1] the country until it reaches the Mediterranean Sea in the north. Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
It is a modern city in Lower Egypt. Libya lies to the west of Egypt, and Sudan lies to the south. The Red Sea lies[2] on Egypt's east coast.
The Fayoum Depression is a very special place, as it's an oasis with the biggest waterfalls[3] in Egypt. It has the huge Wadi El Rayan park, which is home to many birds and animals. There are also fossils[4] of whales! Fayoum has lakes and amazing sights[5] all in one place!

(1) يجرى عبر
(2) يقع
(3) شلالات
(4) حفريات
(5) مناظر رائعة

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة (صح أو خطأ):

	True	False
1 Cairo is the capital of Egypt.	( )	( )
2 The Red Sea lies on Egypt's north coast.	( )	( )
3 Fayoum doesn't have any amazing sights.	( )	( )

Parents' tips
Help your child read the passage correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.
الترجمة:
● مصر بلد جميلة جداً. يمر النيل عبر البلاد حتى يصل إلى البحر الأبيض المتوسط في الشمال. القاهرة هى عاصمة مصر. إنها مدينة حديثة في الوجه البحرى. تقع ليبيا إلى الغرب من مصر والسودان تقع في الجنوب. يقع البحر الأحمر على الساحل الشرقي لمصر. يعد منخفض الفيوم مكاناً مميزاً جداً، حيث إنه واحة تضم أكبر شلالات في مصر. ويوجد به محمية وادي الريان الضخمة التى هى موطن لكثير من الطيور والحيوانات. هناك أيضًا حفريات الحيتان! الفيوم بها بحيرات ومناظر خلابة في مكان واحد!

B The Nile Delta



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	fertile (adj.)	خصبة	river bank	ضفة النهر
low (adj.)	منخفض	wind erosion	تعرية بفعل الرياح	canal	قناة مائية

Extra vocabulary

branches	فروع	toward	باتجاه	Port Said	بورسعيد
Nile Valley	وادي النيل	crops	محاصيل	wheat	قمح
dates	بلح	beans	فول	lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس
stem	جذع	Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية	level	مستوى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعال منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present	Past
flow	يتدفق	flowed	stretch تمتد	stretched
look	يبدو	looked	connect يربط / يصل	connected
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**	
Present		Past	Present	Past
grow	ينمو	grew	say يقول	said
make	يصنع	made	mean يعني	meant

Expressions and Phrases

spread out	يتفرع	looks like	يشبه	connected to	متصل بـ

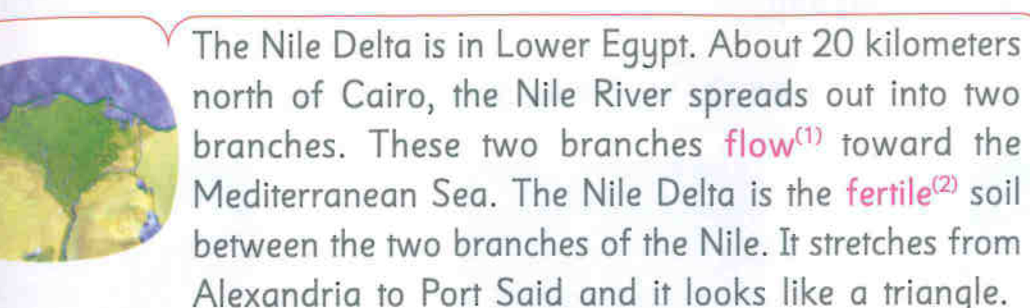
Definitions

flow	يتدفق	the way water moves	طريقة تحرك الماء
fertile (adj.)	خصبة	good land to grow plants and crops	أرض جيدة لزراعة النباتات والمحاصيل
river bank	ضفة النهر	the land along the side of a river	الأرض على جانب النهر
wind erosion	تعرية بفعل الرياح	when the wind changes or destroys something	عندما تُغير أو تدمر الريح شيئًا ما
canal	قناة مائية	a waterway made by humans	مجرى مائي صنعه البشر

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the words and say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



The Nile Delta is in Lower Egypt. About 20 kilometers north of Cairo, the Nile River spreads out into two branches. These two branches flow(1) toward the Mediterranean Sea. The Nile Delta is the fertile(2) soil between the two branches of the Nile. It stretches from Alexandria to Port Said and it looks like a triangle.



(1) يتدفق



(2) خصبة



The Nile Valley is the area of land on the banks of the Nile River. It is very good for growing crops like wheat, dates, and beans. Many people say that the Nile Valley is like a lotus flower – the river and the river banks(3) are the stem of the flower, and the Nile Delta is the flower.

(3) ضفاف النهر



The Fayoum Depression is in the Western Desert of Egypt. It is an area of land that is low(4) below sea level. It was made by wind erosion(5) about 1.8 million years ago. It is connected to the Nile River by the Bahr Youssef canal (6). This means there is water here, so it is a green place where many plants grow.

(4) منخفض
(5) تعرية بفعل الرياح
(6) قناة مائية

Vocabulary Check

Names of places and geographical features should be capitalized.
يجب كتابة أسماء الأماكن والمعالم الجغرافية بأحرف كبيرة.



e.g. Red Sea - Fayoum Depression.

Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The Nile Delta looks like a (triangle – rectangle – circle).
2. The Nile Valley is on the banks of the (Red Sea – Mediterranean Sea – River Nile).
3. The Fayoum Depression was made by (water – wind – soil) erosion.

Parents' tips
Help your child read the passages correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرات بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

- تقع دلتا النيل في الوجه البحرى. حوالى ٢٠ كيلومترًا شمال القاهرة، يتفرع نهر النيل إلى فرعين. يتدفق هذان الفرعان نحو البحر الأبيض المتوسط. دلتا النيل هى التربة الخصبة بين فرعى النيل. تمتد من الإسكندرية إلى بورسعيد وتبدو وكأنها مثلث.
- وادى النيل هو مساحة الأرض على ضفاف نهر النيل. وهى جيدة جدًّا لزراعة المحاصيل مثل: القمح، التمر والفول. يقول الكثير من الناس إن وادى النيل يشبه زهرة اللوتس - النهر وضفافه هما جذع الزهرة، ودلتا النيل هى الزهرة.
- يقع منخفض الفيوم في الصحراء الغربية لمصر. هو مساحة الأرض التى تكون منخفضة تحت مستوى سطح البحر. صنعته تعرية الرياح منذ حوالى 1.8 مليون سنة. وهى متصلة بنهر النيل عن طريق قناة بحر يوسف. هذا يعنى أنه يوجد ماء هنا، لذا فهو عبارة عن مكان أخضر حيث تنمو به العديد من النباتات.



Erosion



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



wind erosion
تعرية بفعل الرياح



soil erosion
تعرية التربة



sculptures
منحوتات

Extra vocabulary

White Desert	الصحراء البيضاء	stones	أحجار	against	ضد/عكس	rocks	صخور
shape	شكل	damage	أذى/ضرر	particles	جزيئات	away	بعيد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعـال منتظمـة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
change	يغير	changed	happen	يحدث	happened
move	يتحرك	moved	cause	يسبب	caused
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
make	يصنع	made	blow	يعصف/يهب	blew

Expressions and Phrases

made by	صنع بواسطة	over time	مع مرور الوقت	break down	يحطم/يجزئ



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (h) فى (white) (silent) صامت لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) أحيانًا ينطق /z/ (ز) كما فى (desert) .
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (tu) ينطقان /tʃ/ (تش) كما فى (sculpture).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ge) ينطقان /dʒ/ (دج) كما فى (change/damage).

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the words and say them correctly.

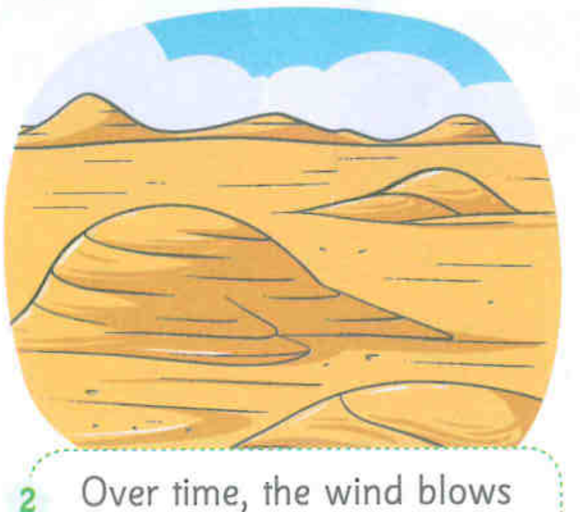
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



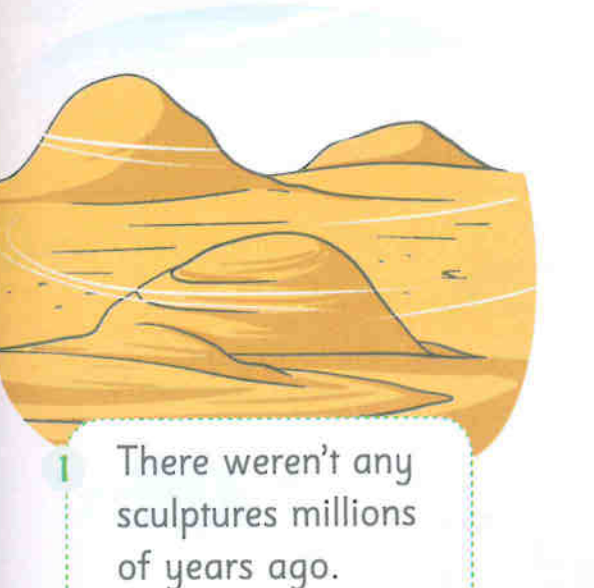


Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

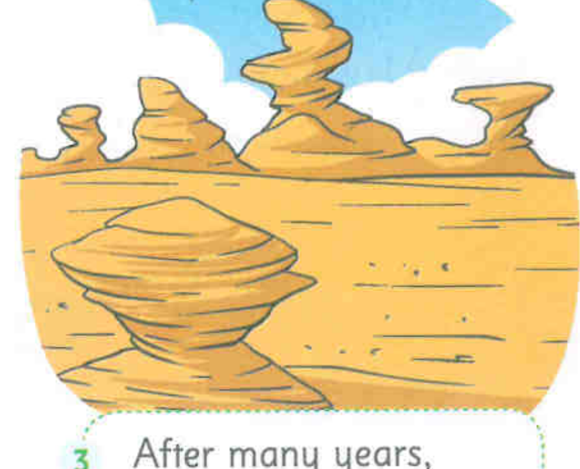
In Egypt's White Desert, you can see some amazing sculptures. How did they get there? They were made by the wind.



2 Over time, the wind blows sand and small stones against the rocks.
The rocks change shape.



1 There weren't any sculptures millions of years ago.



3 After many years, the wind and sand turn the rocks into beautiful sculptures.

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passages correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرات بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

- تعرية بفعل الرياح: فى الصحراء البيضاء بمصر، يمكنك رؤية بعض المنحوتات الرائعة. كيف وصلوا إلى هناك؟ لقد صنعت بواسطة الريح.
- لم تكن هناك أى منحوتات منذ ملايين السنين.
- بمرور الوقت، تهب الرياح بالرمل والحجارة الصغيرة على الصخور. الصخور تغير شكلها.
- بعد عدة سنوات، الريح والرمال حولت الصخور إلى منحوتات جميلة.

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Wind erosion	Soil erosion
  	
When the wind moves the soil from one place to another, and causes change or damage to the soil.	When water, wind, or other things break down the soil, and take the soil particles away.



Think

Aswan Dam was built to stop the Nile flooding every year. Whenever a flood happens, it causes soil erosion and destroys fields and crops. It also results in the loss of human life.



تم بناء سد أسوان لوقف فيضان النيل كل عام. فكلما يحدث فيضان، يتسبب فى تآكل التربة ويدمر الحقول والمحاصيل. كما أنه يؤدى إلى خسائر فى الأرواح البشرية.

Check point

Look and write: انظر واكتب:

1  ....

2  ....

3  ....

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passages correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرات بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

- تعرية الرياح: عندما تحرك الرياح التربة من مكان إلى آخر، وتسبب تغيرًا أو ضررًا للتربة.
- تعرية التربة: عندما تحطم المياه أو الرياح أو أشياء أخرى التربة، وتزيل جزيئات التربة.

PRACTICE — Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4



1. (Cairo – Giza – Fayoum) is the capital of Egypt.
2. The (Fayoum Depression – White Desert – Nile Valley) is good for growing crops.
3. We can see some amazing (sculptures – crops – stones) in the White Desert.
4. Libya lies to the (east – south – west) of Egypt.

2 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 5



Mediterranean – crops – Lower – branches – Valley

The Nile Delta is in .... Egypt. The Nile River spreads out into two .... These two branches flow toward the .... Sea. The Nile .... is the area of land on the banks of the Nile River. It is very good for growing ....

3 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 2



1. The fayoum depression is a very special place

   ....

2. how were the sculptures in the White desert made

   ....

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child choose the correct words.
(2) Help your child fill in the gaps.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentence or question.

ساعد طفلك أن يختار الكلمات الصحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يملأ الفراغات.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة أو السؤال المعطى.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 2





Listening



12





1 Listen and supply the missing letters: استمع وأكمل الحروف الناقصة: 4









1. m _ unt _ in
2. ra _ nfo _ est
3. wa _ erfal _ s
4. g _ a _ ier



Reading









2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 4

A	B
1 Wind erosion is	( ) to Port Said.
2 The wind blows sand and stones against the rocks, ...	( ) and amazing sights all in one place!
3 The Nile Delta stretches from Alexandria ...	( ) when the wind changes or destroys something.
4 Fayoum has lakes ...	( ) and so the rocks change shape.





Writing



3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1. a very – is – Egypt – beautiful – country.

   ....

2. special – The Fayoum – is – Depression – a - place – very.

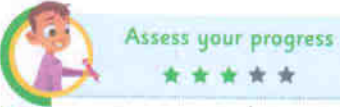
   ....

3. made – the – sculptures – What?

   ....

4. coast – Sea – on – The – east – Egypt's – Red – lies.

   ....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

STUDY



Lesson 3





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary











sleeves	robe (galabeya)	pockets	belt	crown	gloves
أكمام	رداء (جلابية)	جيوب	حزام	تاج	قفازات

Extra vocabulary

social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	project	مشروع	Egyptian (adj.)	مصري
clothing	ملابس	information	معلومات	Sohag	سوهاج
traditional (adj.)	تقليدي	clothes	ملابس	men	رجال
popular (adj.)	شعبي/مشهور	cotton	قطن	sunburned (adj.)	مصاب بحروق الشمس
hidden (adj.)	مخفي	festival	مهرجان/عيد	Eid	عيد
colorful (adj.)	ملون	patterns	أنماط (أشكال)	useful (adj.)	مفيد/نافع
costume	زي				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعـــال منتظمـة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
talk	يتكلم	talked	want	يريد	wanted
live	يعيش	lived	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
wear	يرتدي	wore	tell	يخبر	told



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ti) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش) كما في (traditional).
- لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ci) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش) كما في (special).
- لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ex) ينطقان /igz/ (إيجز) كما في (example) .

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the new words and say them correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Tomas: Hi, Fares. Can you help me? I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Can you give me some information?

مرحبًا فارس. هل بإمكانك مساعدتى؟ أقوم بعمل بمشروع مدرسى عن الملابس المصرية. هل تستطيع أن تعطينى بعض المعلومات؟



Fares: Hi, Tomas. Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

مرحبًا توماس. نعم بالطبع. ماذا تريد أن تعرف؟



Tomas: Well, what do you usually wear?

حسنًا، ماذا ترتدى عادة؟



Fares: I live in Sohag and it's usually very hot here. Today, I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt.

أعيش فى سوهاج وعادة ما يكون الجو حارًا جدًا هنا. اليوم، أنا أرتدى شورتًا وتيشرتًا.



Tomas: Cool! Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes?

رائع! هل يمكن أن تخبرنى عن بعض الملابس المصرية التقليدية؟





Fares: Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white **robe** that is very popular.

بالطبع. حسنًا، يرتدى الكثير من الرجال الجلابية. هذا هو الرداء الأبيض الطويل وهو مشهور جدًا.

Tomas: Yes, I've seen it. It looks really cool to wear.

نعم، لقد رأيت ذلك. يبدو رائعًا حقًا للارتداء.



Fares: Yes, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The **sleeves** are long so we don't get sunburned!

إنه رائع لأنه مصنوع من القطن. عادة ما يكون أبيض، لكن يمكنك الحصول عليه بألوان أخرى أيضًا. الأكمام طويلة فلا نتعرض لحروق الشمس!





Tomas: Are there **pockets**?

هل يوجد جيوب؟

Fares: Yes! But they're hidden – you can't see them from the outside.

نعم! لكنها مخفية - لا يمكنك رؤيتها من الخارج.

Tomas: Do you wear galabeyas when you're celebrating a special festival?

هل ترتدى الجلابيات عند الاحتفال بمهرجان خاص؟



Fares: We do, and the clothes we wear for Eid, for example, are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes there are beautiful patterns on them.

نعم نرتديها، والملابس التى نرتديها فى العيد على سبيل المثال جميلة جدًا. يمكن أن تكون ملونة. فى بعض الأحيان هناك أنماط جميلة عليها.

Tomas: Thanks, Fares. That's really useful!

شكرًا فارس. هذا مفيد حقًا!

Vocabulary Check

- "information" is an uncountable word.
  لاحظ أن كلمة information لا تجمع.
- (made of) is used when the original material doesn't change.
  تستخدم made of عندما لا تتغير المادة الخام.
  e.g. The chair is made of wood.
- (made from) is used when the original material changes.
  تستخدم made from عندما تتغير المادة الخام.
  The galabeya is made from cotton.

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.



Language Focus



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشِر وقل:

Infinitive of purpose صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

We use the infinitive of purpose to express purpose, and to say why someone does something:

نستخدم صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض، ولإيضاح سبب قيام شخص ما بشيء ما.

Form

Subject فاعل + verb + object مفعول به + to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

 e.g.



He went to the supermarket to buy milk.

ذهب إلى السوبر ماركت لشراء اللبن.



They packed their suitcases to travel.

حزموا حقائبهم ليسافروا.



We use the "past simple" to talk about actions that started and finished in the past.

نستخدم «الماضي البسيط» للتحدث عن أفعال بدأت و انتهت في الماضي.

Form: (Subject فاعل + regular/irregular verb (past tense form) + complement تكملة الجملة.)

 e.g.

1. Aya walked to school yesterday.
2. They bought a new house last week.

Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ali cleaned the house to (helps – help – helped) his mom.
2. He went to the library (borrow – to borrow – borrowing) a book.
3. He wore a swimming shorts (to – by – of) go swimming.

SB

Parents' tips
Help your child use the infinitive of purpose correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض بطريقة صحيحة.



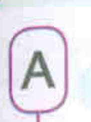
PRACTICE

Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 4



A

1. Salma went to the shopping mall ...
2. My brother is doing a school project about...
3. The sleeves are long ...
4. I wore a galabeya to ...

B

( ) so I don't get sunburned.
( ) stay cool.
( ) Egyptian traditional clothes.
( ) to buy clothes.



2 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 5



protect – sleeves – meet – patterns – cool

Jana went to the park to .... her friends. She was wearing a skirt with beautiful .... and a white shirt with long .... She looked really .... She wore her sunglasses to .... her eyes.

3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4







1. went – I – bedroom – sleep – to – my – to.
....
2. hidden – in – There – galabeya – pockets – are – the.
....
3. usually – you – wear – do – What?
....
4. you – information – me – Can – give - some?
....

Parents' tips
(1) Help your child read and match.
(2) Help your child fill in the gaps.
(3) Help your child re-arrange to write correct sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يملأ الفراغات.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 3



Listening

13

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

wear – sleeves – don't – shorts

Alaa : What do you like to .... in summer?
Marwan: I like to wear T-shirts and ....
Alaa : Do you like T-shirts with long ....?
Marwan: No, I ....



Reading

2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. My parents used bright colors to (paints – painted – paint) the house.
2. Yesterday, Mona (go – going – went) to the kitchen to make a sandwich.
3. Noha bought a new dress to (wore – wear – wears) it in her friend's wedding.
4. I've got a (stripped – spotted – pattern) sweater. It's lined white and pink.





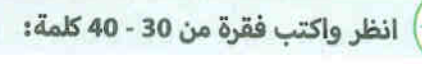
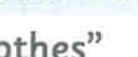
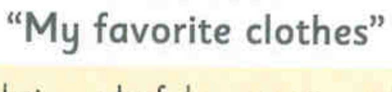


Writing

3 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5

"My favorite clothes"

jacket – colorful – wear – cold

....
....
....
....





Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

STUDY Lesson 4




A Story






Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

kind (adj.)	طيب / عطوف	honest (adj.)	صادق	shoemaker	صانع أحذية	wife	زوجة
poor (adj.)	فقير	workshop	ورشة	leather	جلد	elves	أقزام

Extra vocabulary

money	مال	dear	عزيزى/عزيزتى	enough (adj.)	كاف
tired (adj.)	مرهق	following	التالى	quickly	بسرعة
pair of	زوج من	surprised (adj.)	متفاجئ	shop	محل
perfect (adj.)	مثالى	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	meal	وجبة
amazed (adj.)	مندهش/مذهول	little (adj.)	صغير الحجم	soon	قريبًا
again	مرة أخرى				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past

Present		Past	Present		Past
Regular verbs				**أفعال منتظمة**	
work	يعمل	worked	believe	يصدق	believed
call	ينادى	called	try	يجرب	tried
arrive	يصل	arrived	start	يبدأ	started
thank	يشكر	thanked	dance	يرقص	danced
Irregular verbs				**أفعال غير منتظمة**	
Present		**Past**	**Present**		**Past**
pay	يدفع	paid	buy	يشترى	bought
cut	يقطع	cut	leave	يغادر	left
hide	يختبئ	hid	sit	يجلس	sat

Expressions and Phrases

once upon a time	ذات مرة/كان يا ما كان	work hard	يعمل بجد
try on	يجرب (ملابس/حذاء)	find out	يكتشف

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the new words and say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات الجديدة ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.

The elves and the shoemaker



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



Once upon a time, a kind(1) and honest(2) shoemaker lived in town with his wife.
They were very poor(3), but they were happy(4).
The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.

(1) طيب / عطوف
(2) صادق
(3) فقير
(4) سعيد

The middle

One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. "Oh dear. I've only got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too tired(5) to make them tonight. I'll cut the leather now and make the shoes in the morning." The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.
The following morning, the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an amazing pair of shoes. "They are beautiful(6). Did you make them?" His wife looked surprised. "No, my dear, I didn't make them," he said.
Then a man walked into the shop. "I have never seen such amazing(7) shoes," he said. "Can I try them?" He tried on the shoes. "They're perfect," he said and paid the shoemaker. "Quickly," said the shoemaker's wife, "go and buy some more leather." The shoemaker went to buy some more leather.
When he arrived home, the shoemaker's wife had made him a delicious(8) meal. "I will just cut out the leather, and then come and eat." The shoemaker cut out the leather for two pairs of shoes and left the workshop for the night.

(5) متعب
(6) جميل
(7) مذهل
(8) شهي / لذيذ

Parents' tips

Help your child read the story correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

• ذات مرة، عاش صانع أحذية طيب وصادق في المدينة مع زوجته. كانوا فقراء جدًّا، لكنهم كانوا سعداء. عمل صانع الأحذية بجد، لكن لم يكن لديه مال.

• ذات ليلة، كان صانع الأحذية في ورشته. تنهد قائلًا: «يا عزيزتي، لدي فقط ما يكفي من الجلد لزوج واحد من الأحذية. لكنني متعب جدًّا لأصنعهما الليلة. سأقطع الجلد الآن وأصنع الأحذية في الصباح». قطع صانع الأحذية الجلد وذهب إلى الفراش. في صباح اليوم التالي، لم يستطع صانع الأحذية أن يصدق عينيه. دعا زوجته للحضور بسرعة إلى ورشة العمل. قال صانع الأحذية: «انظري إلى هذه الأحذية!». هناك، على المنضدة كان زوجًا رائعًا من الأحذية. «إنهما جميلان. هل صنعتهما؟ بدت زوجته مندهشة. قال: «لا، يا عزيزتي، أنا لم أصنعهما». ثم دخل رجل إلى المتجر. قال «لم أر قط مثل هذه الأحذية الرائعة». «هل يمكنني تجربتهما؟» جرب الرجل الحذاء. وقال«إنهما مثاليان،»، ودفع لصانع الأحذية. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: «بسرعة، اذهب واشتر المزيد من الجلود». وذهب صانع الأحذية لشراء المزيد من الجلود. عندما وصل إلى المنزل، كانت زوجة صانع الأحذية قد أعدت له وجبة لذيذة. «سأقطع الجلد فقط، ثم آتي وآكل». قطع صانع الأحذية الجلد لزوجين من الأحذية، وغادر الورشة طوال الليل.

The following morning, the shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must find out who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's hide tonight and see who is helping us."
That night, the shoemaker cut out the leather and then hid. They were very surprised to see two little elves! The elves started to make the shoes. Soon, they had made two more pairs of beautiful shoes. "We must thank the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

The end

The next night, the elves found their new(9) clothes. They were so happy that they danced around the workshop before sitting down to make more shoes.
Soon, people came from all over the land to buy the shoemaker's shoes. He and his wife weren't ever poor again and they lived happily ever after.

(9) جديد

Vocabulary Check

Adjectives are words that describe nouns. الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء.

e.g. delicious food — poor man

Adjectives are used to: تستخدم الصفات لـ :

a) describe people: وصف الأشخاص:

e.g. The shoemaker and his wife were very poor.

b) describe things: وصف الأشياء:

e.g. The shoemaker's wife made a delicious meal.

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	The shoemaker and his wife were poor.	( )	( )
2	The shoemaker found the pair of shoes on a chair.	( )	( )
3	Two little elves helped the shoemaker.	( )	( )

• في صباح اليوم التالي، اندهش صانع الأحذية وزوجته لرؤية زوجين جميلين من الأحذية في الورشة. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: «يجب أن نعرف من يصنع هذه الأحذية». «دعنا نختبئ الليلة ونرى من يساعدنا». في تلك الليلة، قطع صانع الأحذية الجلد ثم اختبأ. لقد فوجئا جدًّا برؤية اثنين من الأقزام الصغار. بدأ الأقزام في صنع الأحذية. وسرعان ما صنعا زوجين آخرين من الأحذية الجميلة. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: «يجب أن نشكر الأقزام، دعنا نصنع لهما ملابس جديدة».

• في الليلة التالية، عثر الأقزام على ملابسهم الجديدة. كانوا سعداء للغاية لدرجة أنهم رقصوا حول ورشة العمل قبل الجلوس لصنع المزيد من الأحذية. سرعان ما جاء الناس من جميع أنحاء الأرض لشراء أحذية صانع الأحذية. لم يعد هو وزوجته فقراء مرة أخرى وعاشوا في سعادة دائمة.



Pronunciation

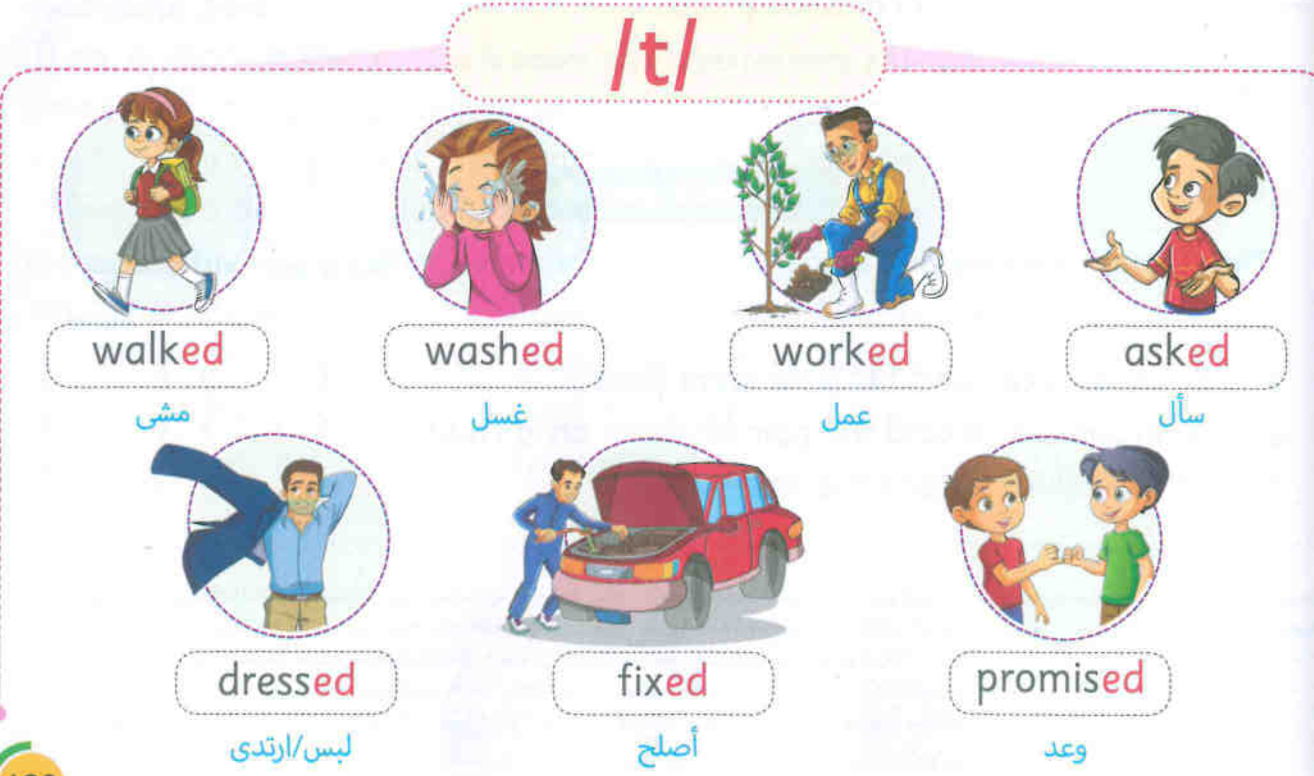


Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

A) We pronounce the "ed" as /d/ when it comes after the following letters: l, n, r, g, v, s, w, y, or z.



B) We pronounce the "ed" as /t/ when it comes after the following letters: p, k, sh, ch, gh, th, ss, c, or x.





C) We pronounce the "ed" as /ɪd/ when it comes after the following letters: t, d, or voiced sound.

Check point

Listen and circle: استمع وضع دائرة:

1 needed – cleaned
2 slowed – dressed
3 tasted – asked

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the words with /d/, /t/, and /ɪd/ sounds using the QR code and let him/her say them correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التي تحتوي على أصوات الـ/d/ و/t/ و/Id/ باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



Math



Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Multiply multi-digit numbers

$$\begin{array}{r} 32 \\ \times\ 21 \\ \hline 32 \\ +\ 640 \\ \hline 672 \end{array}$$

Steps

1. 1 x 2
2. 1 x 3
3. add 0
4. 2 x 2
5. 2 x 3
6. Add

$$\begin{array}{r} 15 \\ \times\ 32 \\ \hline 30 \\ +\ 450 \\ \hline 480 \end{array}$$

e.g. For sports day, Mr Hany ordered 14 boxes of T-shirts for the students. Each box has 12 T-shirts.
How many T-shirts did Mr Hany order?

Answer:

$$\begin{array}{r} 14 \\ \times\ 12 \\ \hline 28 \\ +140 \\ \hline 168 \end{array}$$

14 x 12 = 168



Did you know?

If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero!

إذا ضربت أي رقم في صفر ، فإن الإجابة هي صفرا

Parents' tips
Help your child learn how to multiply a multi-digit number.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيفية ضرب عدد متعدد الأرقام.



PRACTICE Lesson 4



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read and sort: اقرأ وصنف: 4

needed – asked – enjoyed – promised – slowed – counted – tidied – delivered – dressed



/d/	/t/	/Id/
....	....	....
....	....	....
....	....	....



2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 4

A	B
1 30 × 20 =	( ) but they were happy.
2 The shoemaker's job ...	( ) and I played football.
3 I walked to the park ...	( ) 600
4 They were very poor, ...	( ) is to make shoes.

3 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 3





1. can i try them
....
2. the shoemaker couldn t believe his eyes
....

Parents' tips
(1) Help your child read and sort. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصنف.
(2) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل.
(3) Help your child punctuate the given sentence or question. ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة أو السؤال المعطى.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 4




Listening

12

1 Listen and circle: استمع وضع دائرة: (4)

1. cleaned – needed
2. worked – tasted
3. studied – fixed
4. dressed – counted



Reading

2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: (4)

1. The elves in the story were very (little – big – tall) and funny.
2. The shoemaker cuts (leather – clothes – paper) and makes beautiful shoes.
3. 50 × 50 = (1000 – 2000 – 2,500).
4. The shoes were (delicious – amazing – dangerous). Everyone liked them.







Writing

3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: (4)

1. delivered – food – The – the – driver.

....

2. every – shoes – Who – made- the – night?

....

3. buy – and – Go – more – leather – some.

....

4. clothes – made – for – They – new – the elves.

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



STUDY



Lesson 5 Writing



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Student A

I really like our school uniform(1). Everyone wears a short-sleeved(2) white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers(3). We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.

Student B

At school, I wear a pale(4) blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie(5) every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes(6) on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked(7) skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.

Student C

Our school uniform is really smart(8). We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie. We wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.

Student D

The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. We wear white shirts and we've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. My sister's uniform is different. She wears a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.

Student E

Our uniform is a dark green skirt for the girls or dark green shorts for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests (9) or jackets. I like my uniform!

(1)	زى رسمى
(2)	بأكمام قصيرة
(3)	بناطيل
(4)	باهت (شاحب)
(5)	رابطة عنق
(6)	خطوط
(7)	مربعات (كاروهات)
(8)	أنيق
(9)	سترات

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

الطالب أ : أنا حقًا أحب زى مدرستنا. يرتدى الجميع قميصًا أبيض بأكمام قصيرة. ترتدى الفتيات تنورة زرقاء والأولاد يرتدون بناطيل زرقاء. علينا جميعًا ارتداء جوارب بيضاء وأحذية جلدية سوداء. لا يصبح الجو شديد البرودة هنا، ولكن عندما يحدث، يمكننا ارتداء قمصاننا الصوفية الزرقاء.

الطالب ب: فى المدرسة، أرتدى قميصًا أزرق باهتًا (شاحبًا) وبنطلونًا أزرق داكنًا. علينا أن نرتدى ربطة عنق كل يوم. إنه أزرق غامق عليه خطوط زرقاء فاتحة. ترتدى الفتيات فى مدرستى أيضًا قميصًا أزرق باهتًا، لكنهن لا يرتدين البناطيل. يرتدون جيبة مربعات (كاروهات) زرقاء وبيضاء. لا يتعين على الفتيات ارتداء ربطة عنق.

الطالب ج: زى مدرستنا أنيق حقًا. يجب أن نرتدى قميصًا أبيض بربطة عنق حمراء. نرتدى جيبة رمادية داكنة وجاكت أزرق.

الطالب د: البنات والأولاد يرتدون زيًا موحدًا مختلفًا فى مدرستى. يرتدى الأولاد شورتًا أخضر فاتحًا وجوارب خضراء طويلة. نرتدى قمصانًا بيضاء ولدينا قميص صوف أحمر داكن عندما يصبح الجو باردًا. زى أختى مختلف. ترتدى جيبة زرقاء وتيشرتًا أصفر.

الطالب هـ: الزى الرسمى لدينا هو جيبة زرقاء داكنة للفتيات أو شورت أزرق غامق للأولاد، وقميص قطنى أزرق زاهٍ، وجوارب بيضاء، وحذاء أسود. عندما يكون الجو باردًا ، نرتدى قمصانًا صوفية أو جواكت زرقاء داكنة. أنا أحب الزى الرسمى الخاص بى!



Read and follow: اقرأ وتتبع:

When we use adjectives, we put them into this order:

1 size	big, small, tall ....
2 age	old, new ....
3 color	black, white, green ....
4 material	cotton, linen, leather ....

e.g.



She wore a green, cotton dress.

He is wearing an old, cotton T-shirt.



Check point

Write the adjectives in the correct order: اكتب الصفات فى الترتيب الصحيح:

1. Dad bought me a ...., ... galabeya. (new, white) SB
2. The shoemaker made ...., ... shoes. (small, leather)
3. I bought a ...., ... jacket for the party. (new, green)



We don't usually use more than three adjectives before a noun.

عادة لا نستخدم أكثر من ٣ صفات قبل الاسم.



Parents' tips
Help your child use the adjectives in the correct order.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الصفات بالترتيب الصحيح.



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Steps to write a description of your favorite clothes:

خطوات كتابة وصف لملابسك المفضلة:

- Write what the favorite clothing is: اكتب ما هى الملابس المفضلة لديك:

1. Write what size, color, material, etc it is.
   اكتب ما حجمها، لونها، والمادة المصنوعة منها ... وهكذا.
2. Write why you like it. اكتب لماذا تحبها.
3. Use or draw a photo of your favorite clothes.
   استخدم أو ارسم صورة لملابسك المفضلة.

e.g.

Write a paragraph of 30 – 40 words about your favorite clothes.

اكتب فقرة من 30– 40 كلمة عن ملابسك المفضلة.

....

....

....

....

....

....

Stick here

Parents' tips
Help your child read and notice the steps of writing a description of his/her favorite clothes.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويلاحظ خطوات كتابة فقرة عن ملابسه المفضلة.





Lesson 6
Project

A leaflet about traditional clothes

Steps of making a leaflet: خطوات عمل ملصق:



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

- Research information about these points: ابحث عن معلومات حول النقاط التالية:

1. The traditional clothes of a country (colors – patterns).
2. When people wear the traditional clothes.
3. What people usually like to wear.

- Write your text. اكتب النص الخاص بك.

- Draw or paste a picture of the traditional clothes. ارسم أو ألصق صورة للملابس التقليدية.

- Revise to correct spelling and punctuation mistakes.

راجع النص لتصحيح أي أخطاء هجائية أو أخطاء بعلامات الترقيم.

Parents' tips

Help your child read and let him/her notice the steps of making a leaflet.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ودعه يلاحظ خطوات كتابة المنشور.

Clothes in Mexico

Clothes in Mexico



These girls are wearing traditional Mexican(1) dresses. Look! They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Girls in Mexico(2) wear dresses like these during feasts(3) and celebrations(4).

Mexican girls love bright colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.



People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero(5) – it's a traditional Mexican hat.





There are lots of different styles(6) of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.

(1)	مكسيكي	(4)	احتفالات
(2)	المكسيك	(5)	قبعة مكسيكية عريضة
(3)	أعياد	(6)	أنماط مختلفة

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

- الملابس في المكسيك: تحب هؤلاء الفتيات ارتداء الأزياء التقليدية. إن تلك الأزياء ملونة جدًا وبها العديد من الشرائط. ترتدى الفتيات في المكسيك فساتين مثل هذه في الأعياد والاحتفالات.
- تحب الفتيات في المكسيك الألوان الزاهية. حتى وإن كانوا لا يحتفلون، يقومون بارتداء الملابس الملونة.
- الناس في المكسك يرتدون القبعات لحماية وجوههم من الشمس. هذه قبعة (سومبريرو)- إنها قبعة تقليدية في المكسيك.
- يوجد العديد من قبعات (سومبريرو). بعضها تحتوى على شرائط، والأخرى ملونة، والبعض منها عليه ذهب وفضة.

REVIEW



Vocabulary



T-shirt, sunglasses, swimming shorts, scarf, sweater, sneakers, necklace, pajamas, spotted, stripped

Language Focus



Infinitive of purpose

We use the infinitive of purpose to express purpose, and to say why someone does something:

Subject + verb + object + to + (inf.) ....



He went to the supermarket to buy milk.



They packed their suitcases to travel.

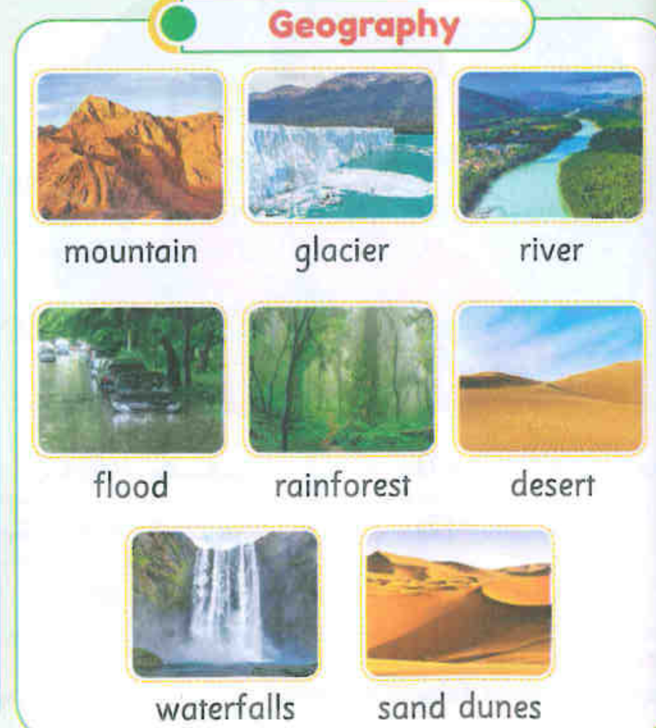
Pronunciation

/d/ – played, cleaned, lived, delivered

/t/ – walked, washed, worked, asked

/Id/ – tidied, needed, studied, counted, tasted

Geography



mountain, glacier, river, flood, rainforest, desert, waterfalls, sand dunes

Check Your Vocabulary



Lesson 1

شورت سباحة	....	تيشرت	....
نظارات شمسية	....	حذاء رياضي	....
منقط	....	كوفية	....
بيجامة	....	قميص صوفي	....
عقد	....	مخطط	....

Lesson 2

فيضان	....	جبل	....
دلتا النيل	....	صحراء	....
الكثبان الرملية	....	غابة استوائية	....
شلالات	....	نهر جليدي	....
منحوتات	....	نهر	....

Lesson 3

معلومات	....	قفازات	....
أكمام	....	مشروع	....
ملون	....	أنماط	....
حزام	....	تاج	....
جيوب	....	مهرجان	....

Lesson 4

بطيء	....	أقزام	....
وعد	....	كاف	....
أراد	....	وجبة	....
عاش	....	صانع أحذية	....
غسل	....	جلد	....

WRITING TIME

Check your writing



Use correct tenses, spelling, and correct punctuation marks.



Start names, days of the week and months, countries or cities with a capital letter.



Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words:

"My trip to Al Fayoum"

family – pack – sweater – pajamas



I am traveling to Al Fayoum tomorrow with my family. We need to pack our suitcases. I need to pack swimming shorts. Mom needs to pack her sweater. My sister needs to pack her pajamas. We are going to spend a nice time.

"Geography of Egypt"

country – north – capital – west



Egypt is a beautiful country. The Nile runs through it up to the north. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. Libya lies to the west of Egypt. Sudan lies to the south. The Red Sea lies on Egypt's east coast.

"My favorite clothes"

trousers – comfortable – linen – pink



My favorite clothes are my trousers and shirt. They are very comfortable. My old white linen trousers are very beautiful. I bought them last year. I also like the new pink cotton shirt. They are my favorite because they are comfortable.

"My school uniform"

uniforms – shorts – skirts – different



My school uniform is very beautiful. The girls wear yellow shirts and blue dresses. The boys wear white shirts and red sweaters. The boys and girls wear black shoes. We all wear red sweaters in winter. I like my school uniform so much.



UNIT 3



AL ADWAA TEST 1



30



Listening







1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: (2)

shirts – project – information – uniform

A : I am doing a .... about clothes.
B : What .... do you need to know?
A : Well, what does your school .... look like?
B : We wear white .... and dark blue skirts.



Reading



2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: (5)

A	B
1 We need to pack our suitcases ...	( ) Egypt's east coast.
2 I need my sweater ...	( ) water, wind, or other things break down the soil.
3 There are fossils of whales ...	( ) for our holiday tomorrow.
4 Soil erosion is when ...	( ) because it's cold at night.
5 The Red sea lies on ...	( ) in Wadi El Rayan in Egypt.



3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: (5)

1 "(Fertile – Flow – Canal)" is the good land to grow plants and crops.
2 The Nile Delta is in (lower – upper – middle) Egypt.
3 Nadia is wearing a (spotted – stripped – costume) dress. It has red and black dots all over it.
4 Marwa went to town to (buy – bought – buying) a new dress.
5 Adel (packs – packed – packing) his black trousers yesterday.



4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: (5)

In Egypt's White Desert, you can see some amazing sculptures. There weren't any sculptures millions of years ago. Here is how they were made. Over time, the wind blows sand and small stones against the rocks. The rocks change shape. After many years, the wind and sand turn the rocks into beautiful sculptures. So, no one has ever made these sculptures. They were made by nature.

A Choose the correct word:

1. The wind blows (dust – air – sand) against the rocks.
2. It takes (tens – ones – millions) of years for these sculptures to form.
3. These sculptures were made by (people – nature – rocks).

B Answer the following questions:

4. Where can you see sculptures in Egypt? ....
5. What does the wind do to the rocks? ....



Writing

5 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً صحيحة:



1. a scarf – Will – she – need?

....

2. wear – What's – favorite – your – thing – to?

....

3. Lower – The Nile – is – Egypt – Delta – in.

....

4. of – Cairo – is – Egypt – the - capital.

....

5. the supermarket – to buy – She – went – to – dinner.

....

6 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة:



"My school uniform "

shirt – skirt – shoes – cold

....
....
....
....



7 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية:



1. we're traveling to alexandria on friday.

....

2. where is wadi Al Rayan

....

UNIT 3



AL ADWAA TEST 2



30



Listening



1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

2

excited – sneakers – holiday – pack

A : Are you going on a .... ?
B : Yes. I am so ....!
A : What will you .... ?
B : I will need my ....



Reading

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:





A	B
1. I like my school uniform.	( ) in the rainforest.
2. I need my sunglasses, ...	( ) B: Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
3. A: What's the capital of Egypt?	( ) I wear a white shirt and blue shorts.
4. There are many trees ...	( ) the wind moves soil causing damage.
5. Wind erosion is when ...	( ) I think it's going to be sunny.



3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة:

5

stripes – shirt – don't – skirt – wear

At school, boys wear a dark blue .... .We have to .... a tie every day. It's white with light blue .... on it. The girls wear a dark .... , they .... wear trousers.

4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

5

The Nile Delta is in Lower Egypt. About 20 kilometers north of Cairo, the Nile River spreads out into two branches. These two branches flow toward the Mediterranean Sea. The Nile Delta is the fertile soil between the two branches of the Nile. It stretches from Alexandria to Port Said and it looks like a triangle. I live in Egypt. Life is good here.

A **Tick (True) or (False):**

	True	False
1 The Nile Delta is in Upper Egypt.	( )	( )
2 There aren't any rivers in Egypt.	( )	( )
3 The land in the Nile Delta area is fertile.	( )	( )

B **Answer the following questions:**

4 What's the capital of Egypt? ....

5 How is life in Egypt? ....



Writing

5 **Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences:** اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 5

1 in – There – isn't – Egypt – a rainforest.

....

2 mom – Did – the – pack – suitcases?

....

3 cool – It – in the – can – be – evening.

....

4 are – My scarfs – made – cotton – of.

....

5 to – They – the library – went – to read – books.

....

6 **Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words:** انظرواكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5

"Geography of Egypt "

country – river – capital – lower

....

....

....

....

7 **Punctuate the following sentences:** ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 3

1 The red Sea lies on egypt's east coast

....

2 where does libya lie on the map

....

Review 1

- Non-fiction Reader
- Review 1 General Practice
- Al-Adwaa Test Review 1



STUDY



Non-fiction Reader
Come to Canada!





Listen, point, and say: استمع ، أشر وقل:



totem pole
قطب الطوطم(عمود يرمز للعائلة)



maple leaf ورقة القيقب



maple syrup شراب القيقب



bear دب



flag علم



landscapes مناظر طبيعية

Extra vocabulary

Canada	كندا	country	دولة
special (adj.)	خاص	north	شمال
capital	عاصمة	Ottawa	أوتاوا (عاصمة كندا)
the largest (adj.)	الأكبر	Russia	روسيا
sculptures	تماثيل/ منحوتات	bright (adj.)	لامع (ساطع)
art	فن	history	تاريخ
different (adj.)	مختلف	climate	مناخ
warm (adj.)	دافيء	woods	غابات
sweet (adj.)	مذاقه حلو	pancakes	فطائر
amazing (adj.)	مذهل/رائع	police	الشرطة
kind (adj.)	عطوف	awesome (adj.)	جميل/ رائع
uniform	زى موحد	wear (v.)	يرتدى
leather	جلد	wide brim	حافة عريضة
protect (v.)	يحمى	belt	حزام
gloves	قفازات	pants	بنطلون
thick (adj.)	سميك		

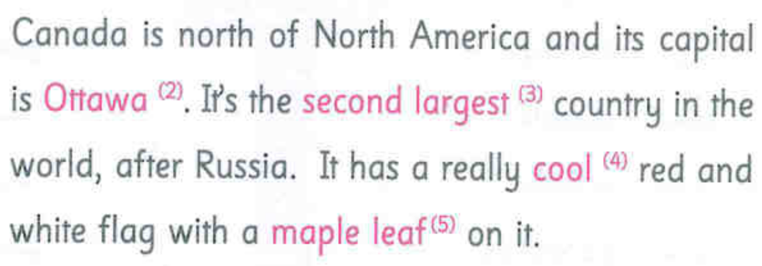
Expressions and Phrases

really cool	حقًّا رائع	all together	معًا
a bit scary	مخيف بعض الشيء	keep us all safe	لإبقائنا جميعا بأمان
light brown	بنى فاتح	dark brown	بنى غامق
stripe down the side	شريط أسفل الجانب	normal days	أيام عادية
quite different	مختلف إلى حد ما		

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the new words and say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع للكلمات الجديدة ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.

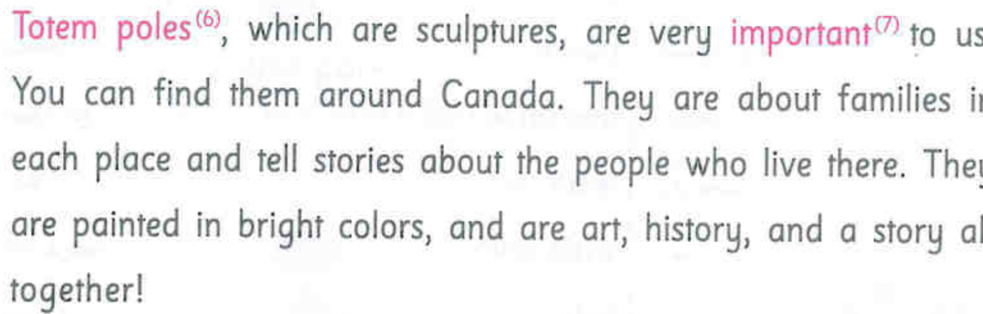
Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Where is Maisie from?



Hi, I'm Maisie. I'm from Canada and I love my country. I'm going to tell you some special things (1) about it. Here we go!

Canada is north of North America and its capital is Ottawa (2). It's the second largest (3) country in the world, after Russia. It has a really cool (4) red and white flag with a maple leaf (5) on it.



Totem poles (6), which are sculptures, are very important (7) to us. You can find them around Canada. They are about families in each place and tell stories about the people who live there. They are painted in bright colors, and are art, history, and a story all together!

Here in Canada, we have lots of different landscapes (8) and climates. Some parts of Canada are very cold. Some are warm. I love Canada's bears – they live in the cold woods (9) and they're very beautiful. But they're a bit scary (10) because they're very big, and sometimes very hungry!

The last thing I wanted to tell you about is maple syrup (11): it's sweet and very nice, and we eat it on pancakes (12) for breakfast a lot. You have to try it!

So, that's my amazing country! Tell me about your country and what you love about it.

(1)	أشياء خاصة
(2)	مدينة أوتاوا
(3)	ثانى أكبر
(4)	رائع
(5)	ورقة القيقب
(6)	(قطب الطوطم) عمود يرمز للعائلة
(7)	هام
(8)	مناظر طبيعية
(9)	الغابات الباردة
(10)	مخيفة إلى حد ما
(11)	شراب القيقب
(12)	الفطائر

Parents' tips

Help your child read a text about in Canada.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ نصًا عن دولة كندا.

الترجمة: مرحبًا ، أنا مايسى. أنا من كندا وأحب بلدى. سأخبركم ببعض الأشياء الخاصة عنها. ها نحن ذا!!
تقع كندا شمال أمريكا الشمالية وعاصمتها أوتاوا. إنها ثانى أكبر دولة فى العالم بعد روسيا. لها علم أحمر وأبيض رائع حقًا مع ورقة قيقب عليها.
تعتبر أعمدة الطوطم(عمود يرمز للعائلة) ، وهى منحوتات، مهمة جدًا بالنسبة لنا. يمكنك أن تجدهم حول كندا. إنهم يدورون حول عائلات فى كل مكان ويخبرون قصصًا عن الأشخاص الذين يعيشون هناك. إنها مطلية بألوان زاهية ، وهى فن وتاريخ وقصة معًا! هنا فى كندا ، لدينا الكثير من المناظر الطبيعية والمناخات المختلفة. بعض الانحاء فى كندا تكون باردة جدا. وبعضها دافئ. أنا أحب الدببة الكندية - إنهم يعيشون فى الغابات الباردة وشكلهم جميل جدًا. لكنهم مخيفون بعض الشىء لأن حجمهم كبير جدًا، وأحيانا يكونوا جائعين جدًا!!
آخر شىء أردت إخباركم به هو شراب القيقب: إنه حلو و مذاقه لذيذ جدًا ونأكله على الفطائر فى وجبه الإفطار كثيرًا. عليكم أن تجربوها! هذا هو بلدى الرائع! أخبرونى عن بلدكم وماذا تحبون فيه.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Hi, it's Maisie again! One more thing (13) I want to tell you about is our police.

They're very kind and help keep us all safe (14). They have an awesome uniform, too – they wear it on special days.

First of all, they wear a light brown leather hat. It has a wide brim to protect their faces from the sun. Then, they have a beautiful red jacket with a dark brown leather belt (15) and long dark brown leather gloves. Their pants are dark blue and have a yellow stripe down the side. Their boots are dark brown (16) leather, too.

On normal days (17), their uniform is quite different – they wear a gray shirt, dark blue pants, and a hat. In the colder parts of Canada, they wear a very thick coat to keep warm.



(13)	شىء أخر
(14)	أمن
(15)	حزام من الجلد
(16)	بنى غامق
(17)	فى الأيام العادية

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):



1. People wear a very thick coat to keep cold. ( ) ( )
2. Canada is north of North America and its capital is Ottawa. ( ) ( )
3. Canada's flag is white and black. ( ) ( )

Parents' tips

Help your child read a text about the police in Canada and their uniform.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ نصًا عن الشرطة فى كندا و زيهم.

الترجمة: مرحبًا ، إنها مايسى مرة أخرى! شىء آخر أريد أن أخبركم عنه هو شرطتنا. إنهم طيبون جدًا ويساعدون فى الحفاظ على سلامتنا جميعًا. لديهم زى رائع ، أيضًا - يرتدونه فى المناسبات الخاصة.

فى البداية ، يرتدون قبعة جلدية لونها بنى فاتح. لها حافة واسعة لحماية وجوههم من الشمس. ثم، لديهم جاكيت أحمر جميل مع حزام جلد بنى غامق وقفازات جلدية بنية داكنة طويلة. بناطيلهم زرقاء داكنة ولها شريط أصفر أسفل الجانب. أحذيتهم جلدية لونها بنى غامق أيضًا.
فى الأيام العادية ، يكون زيهم مختلفًا إلى حد ما - يرتدون قميصًا رماديًا، بنطلونًا أزرق غامق وقبعة. فى الأجزاء الباردة من كندا ، يرتدون معطفًا سميكًا للتدفئة.

GENERAL PRACTICE



1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

Egypt – from – Cairo – capital

Sara : Where are you .... ?

Amira : I'm from ....

Sara : What's the .... of it?

Amira : ....

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A

1. Canada is north of North America, ...
2. In colder parts of Canada, ...
3. Canada's bears ...
4. The maple syrup is sweet and very nice, ...

B

( ) we eat it on pancakes for breakfast.

( ) live in cold woods.

( ) and its capital is Ottawa.

( ) They wear a very thick coat.

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Canada is (east – north – south) of North America.
2. On normal days, police in Canada wear a (gray – green – red) shirt.
3. Maisie eats pancakes for (lunch – breakfast – dinner).
4. Totem poles are (photos – sculptures – pictures).

4 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

1 
....

2 
....

3 
....

4 
....

5 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة:

light – awesome – protect – leather – special

Police in Canada have an .... uniform. They wear it on .... days. They wear a .... brown leather hat. It has a wide brim to .... their faces from the sun. They have a red jacket with a dark brown leather belt and long dark brown .... gloves.

6 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية:

1. is canada the second largest country in the world

....

2. that s my amazing country

....



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

How can we live a healthier life?

There are many things we can do to live a healthier life. For example, we can include fruit and vegetables in our meals. They are healthy and delicious.



Junk food[1] isn't good for us so we shouldn't eat it a lot. Also, try to do some exercise.



Perhaps[2] you love swimming or football? Any kind of exercise is good for you. You could ride your bike to school. Not only is this good exercise, but it means there are fewer[3] cars on the road and less pollution. Play games and have fun[4] with your friends!



(1) وجبات سريعة

(2) ربما

(3) أقل

(4) استمتع

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة: كيف يمكننا أن نعيش حياة صحية.

- يوجد العديد من الاشياء التى تجعلنا نعيش حياة صحية. على سبيل المثال: يمكننا أن نضع الفاكهة والخضراوات فى وجبتنا. فهى صحية ولذيذة. الوجبات السريعة ليست جيدة لنا لذلك لا يجب علينا تناول الكثير منها.
- أيضًا عليك أن تمارس بعض التمارين الرياضية.
- ربما، هل تحب السباحة أم كرة القدم؟ أى نوع من الرياضه مفيد لنا.
- يمكنك أن تركب دراجتك إلى المدرسة. ليس فقط ممارسة الرياضة جيدة ولكن هذا يعنى سيارات أقل على الطريق مما يقلل التلوث .
- ألعب واستمتع مع أصدقائك.

REVIEW 1 GENERAL PRACTICE





1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

A karate – five – sports – want

Ahmed : What .... do you watch on TV?

Youssef : I love watching .... and kung fu. And you?

Ahmed : Sailing looks fun! What time do you .... to play football?

Youssef : About ....



B traditional – wear – galabeya – T-shirt

Tomas : What do you usually ....?

Osama : It's hot, so I wear shorts and a ....

Tomas : Cool! Can you tell me about some .... Egyptian clothes?

Osama : Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the ....

2 Look and write: انظر واكتب:



A

1  ....

2  ....

3  ....

4  ....



B

1  ....

2  ....

3  ....

4  ....



Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A

A	B
1 Chickpeas aren't a fruit or a vegetable.	( ) B: I would like some rice, please.
2 "Grab" means to ...	( ) in the Western Desert of Egypt.
3 The Fayoum Depression is	( ) They belong to a group of foods called legumes.
4 A: What would you like?	( ) pick something up quickly.



B

A	B
1 Mangoes grow in Egypt ...	( ) football, tennis, and swimming.
2 He's very bad at making cakes, ...	( ) We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it.
3 We have sports like ...	( ) when the wind moves the soil from one place to another.
4 Wind erosion is ...	( ) but he's good at making shawerma.

4 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



A

1. I would like (any – an – some) rice, please.
2. I am good (in – on – at) reading English.
3. (Acid – Greenhouse – Nightmare) means a bad dream.
4. Asmaa has white (belt – gloves – hat) on her two hands.

B

1. I went to the library (to borrow – borrow – borrows) a book.
2. How about (buy – buys – buying) some carrots?
3. I went to the football (court – pitch – pool).
4. Fayoum has many (glaciers – lakes – rainforests).





Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة:

A

on – hand – love – ingredients – mix

My favorite recipe is basbousa. First, you need to turn your oven .... to get it hot. Then weigh out the ....Then you .... the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by .... I .... doing this!



B

little – healthy – tree – chocolate – unhealthy

Farida likes .... She thinks that it's OK to eat a ....
It's .... to eat a lot. Mango is her favorite .... food.
She has a mango .... in the garden.

6 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة وأجب عن الأسئلة:



A

I'm Eman. My country is Egypt. Egypt is a very beautiful country. The Nile runs through the country until it reaches the Mediterranean Sea in the north. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is a modern city in Lower Egypt. It has a long history. This history is starting with the Pharaonic culture. Egypt has amazing nature. Egyptians are very friendly. They like to help people. Family is very important for Egyptians. They pay attention to family values and relationships. Egyptians love celebrations. All celebrations include sharing special meals.

A Choose the correct word:

1. Eman is from (Libya – Sudan – Egypt).
2. The Nile runs through the country until it reaches the (Red – Mediterranean – Arabian) Sea.
3. Egypt has (bad – amazing – awful) nature.

B Answer the following questions:

4. How is family very important for Egyptians?

....

5. What do the Egyptians' celebrations include?

....





My favorite sports star is Mohamed Salah. He is a very popular football player. He was born on 15th June in Gharbia. He is 1.75 tall. He started his early life to play for El Mokawloon in 2012. Then, he played for Chelsea and now he plays for Liverpool. He can speak English and Italian. He works hard to achieve his goals. He is a fast runner and he scores a lot of goals. He won a lot of prizes. He is very kind. He helps many poor people. He gives a lot of money to build schools and hospitals in his village.

A Tick (True or False):

	True	False
1 He started his early life to play for El Mokawloon.	( )	( )
2 Mohamed Salah can't speak Italian.	( )	( )
3 Mohamed Salah helps rich people.	( )	( )

B Answer the following questions:

4 Where was Mohamed Salah born? ....

5 Which club does Mohamed Salah play for now? ....

7 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة:



1 buying – an – How about – Mom – apple,?

....

2 very – playing – Salma – at – is – squash – good.

....

3 Egypt – lies – of – Libya – the – to – west.

....

4 wears – eyes – to – sunglasses – Aya – her – protect.

....



1 at – What – good – you – sport – are?

....

2 studied – to get – Moaz – hard – grades – good.

....

3 is – white – Galabeya – long – a – robe.

....

4 I – squash – like – TV – watching – on.

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة:

A **"Hedaya Malak"**



athlete – achievements – practice – medals

....

....

....

....

B **"Chickpeas"**



favorite – recipes – legumes – seeds



....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية:

A

1 hedaya Malak is a very famous egyptian

....

2 are you ready, mariam

....

B

1 cairo is the capital of egypt

....

2 how about buying some lemons, eman

....

Review 1

Al-Adwaa Test



30





1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 2

healthy – favorite – chocolate – think

Salma : What's your .... food?
Aya : That's easy! It's ....
Salma : I love chocolate too. But it isn't ...., is it?
Aya : I .... it's OK to eat a little.



Reading

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 5

A	B
1 A nightmare means ...	( ) but I'm very bad at sailing.
2 We don't have a mango tree ...	( ) protect his face from the sun.
3 A: What are you watching?	( ) in our garden.
4 I'm very good at playing football, ...	( ) a bad dream.
5 Ahmed wears sunglasses to ...	( ) B: I'm watching a squash match.



3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 5

1 Would you like an (pineapple – orange – banana)?
2 You can find (consumers – producers – decomposers) at the start of a food chain.
3 (Galabeya – Sweater – Scarf) is traditional Egyptian clothes.
4 I would like (a – an – some) orange, please.
5 It's too hot today. I need to wear my (sweater – sneakers – sunglasses).





4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: 5

I'm Hana. I like many kinds of fruit. My favorite fruit is mango. We have a mango tree in our garden. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it. Mango is known as the king of fruits. It's also the national fruit of India. Mango grows during the summer season. It's very rich with minerals and nutrients. The taste of mango is very delicious.

A Choose the correct word:

1 Hana has a mango tree in the (garden – house – school).
2 (Banana – Orange – Mango) is known as the king of fruits.
3 The taste of mango is (delicious – awful – bad).

B Answer the following questions:

4 When does mango grow? ....
5 What is mango rich with? ....



Writing

5 Read and a re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 5



1 you – a scarf – Will – a coat – need – and?
....
2 onions – tomatoes – grows – My father – and.
....
3 sports – Egypt – do – What – have – we – in?
....
4 good – football – Ali – playing – at – is.
....
5 wearing – a – and – I'm – T-shirt – shorts.
....

6 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5



"My favorite sport"

play – karate – club – good at

....
....
....
....

7 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 3

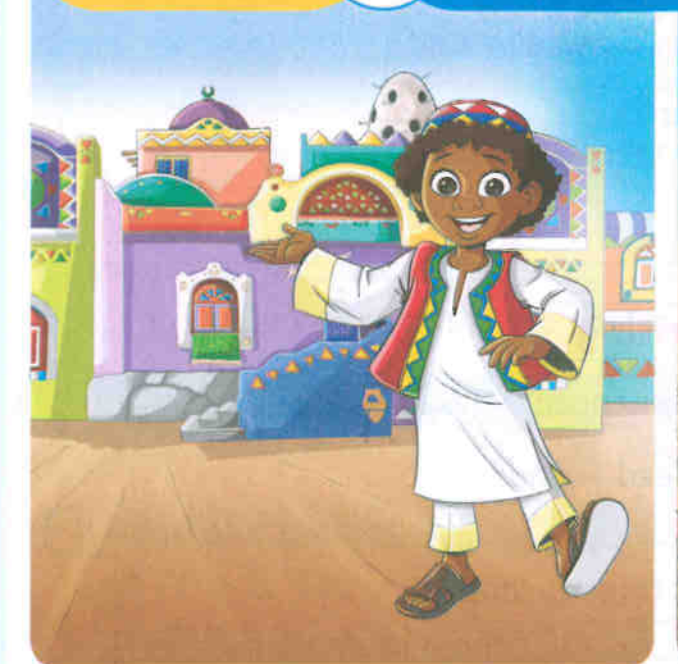


1 these girls are wearing traditional mexican dresses/
....
2 what would you like, amira
....



THEME 2

Myself and others
نفسى والآخرون







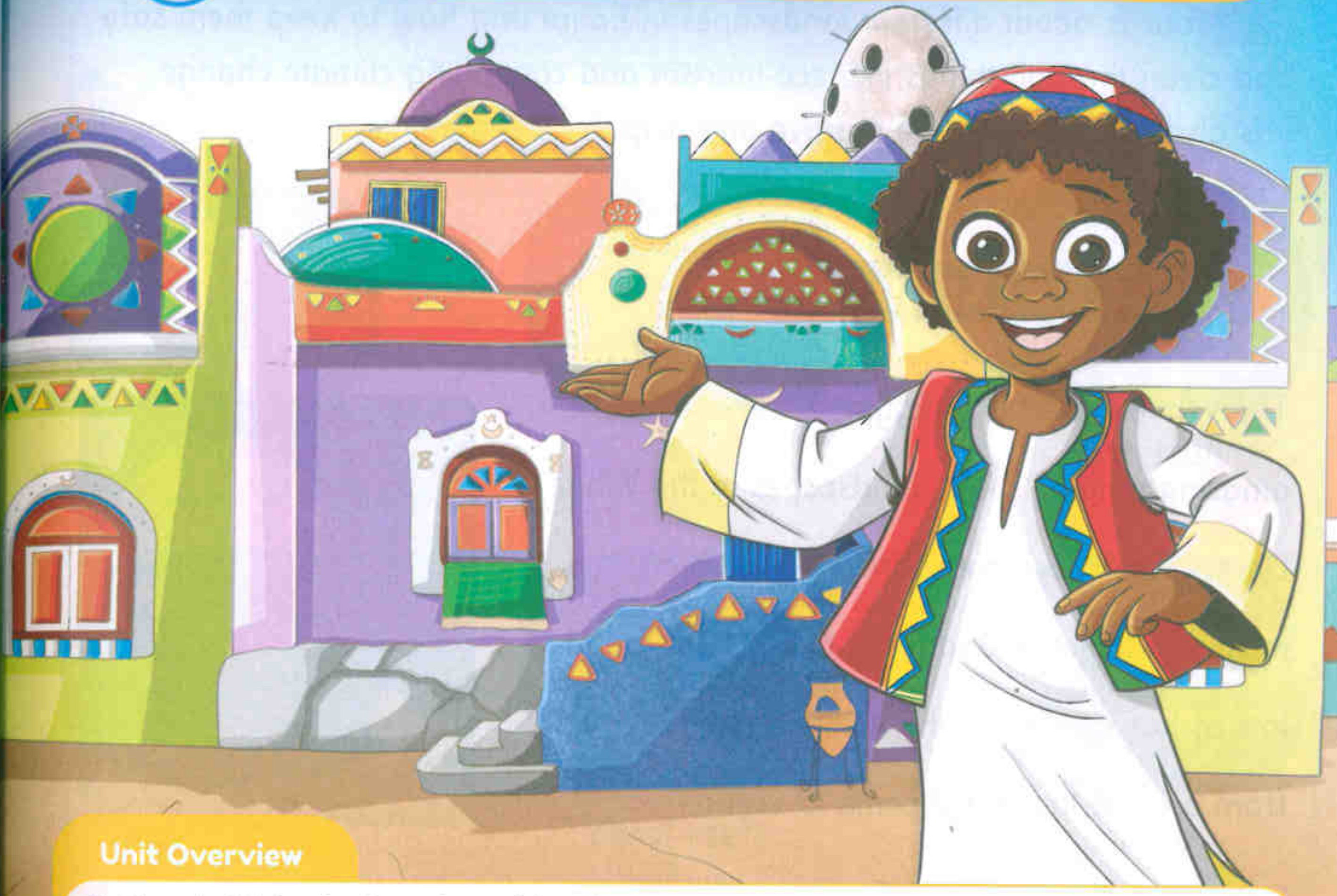
Parents' tips:

In Theme Two "Myself and others", students learn more about the world around them. They learn more about different landscapes in their country and how to help keep their community safe and sustainable. They learn about different jobs in Ancient and modern Egypt and how these jobs help their community. They learn also about the various ecosystems we have in Egypt and how they make Egypt special. They learn about the weather near and around them, and extreme weather conditions that they may see or hear about, and how to deal with extreme weather conditions and keep safe when facing them.

فى المحور الثانى «نفسى والآخرون» يتعلم الطلاب المزيد عن العالم من حولهم ويتعلمون المزيد عن المناظر الطبيعية المختلفة فى بلدهم وكيفية المساعدة فى الحفاظ على مجتمعهم آمنًا ومستدامًا. يتعلمون عن الوظائف المختلفة فى مصر القديمة والحديثة وكيف تساعد هذه الوظائف مجتمعهم. يتعلمون أيضًا عن النظم البيئية المختلفة التى لدينا فى مصر وكيف تجعل مصر مميزة. يتعلمون عن الطقس بالقرب منهم ومن حولهم، والظروف الجوية القاسية التى قد يروها أو يسمعون عنها، وكيفية التعامل مع الظروف الجوية القاسية والحفاظ على سلامتهم عند مواجهتها.

Unit 4

Looking after our world
الاعتناء بعالمنا



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about different landscapes.
  - learn about Elephantine Island.
  - use sentences in the past continuous.
  - learn about greenhouse gases and climate change.
  - learn and talk about eco-tourism in Egypt.
  - learn about number sequences.
  - learn how to say three consonants together.
  - learn to correct spelling mistakes.
  - read and listen to a short story about a community garden.
  - write a flyer about eco-tourism in Egypt.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث ويكتب عن مناظر طبيعية مختلفة.
  - يتعلم عن «جزيره الفنتين».
  - يستخدم جملًا فى زمن الماضى المستمر.
  - يتعلم عن غازات الاحتباس الحرارى وتغير المناخ.
  - يتعلم ويتحدث عن السياحة البيئية فى مصر.
  - يتعلم عن التسلسل الرقمى.
  - يتعلم كيف ينطق ثلاثة حروف ساكنة معًا.
  - يتعلم أن يصحح الأخطاء الإملائية.
  - يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة عن حديقة عامة.
  - يكتب نشرة إعلانية عن السياحة البيئية فى مصر.

Life skills

Critical thinking - التفكير النقدى

- Identifying cause and result in the natural world. - التعرف على السبب والنتيجة فى عالم الطبيعة.
- Identifying benefits of helping in your community. - التعرف على فوائد المساعدة فى المجتمع.

Values

Tolerance - التسامح

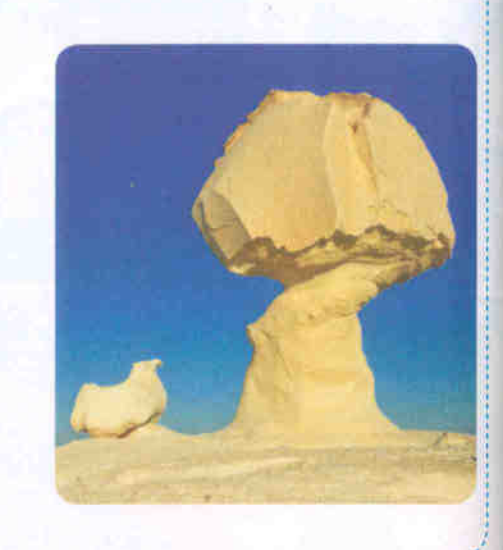
- Helping people at the community. - التعرف على فوائد المساعدة فى المجتمع.

Warm up

Unit four is about different landscapes in Egypt and how to keep them safe and clean through things like eco-tourism and controlling climate change. It is also about how to be positive and help the community.

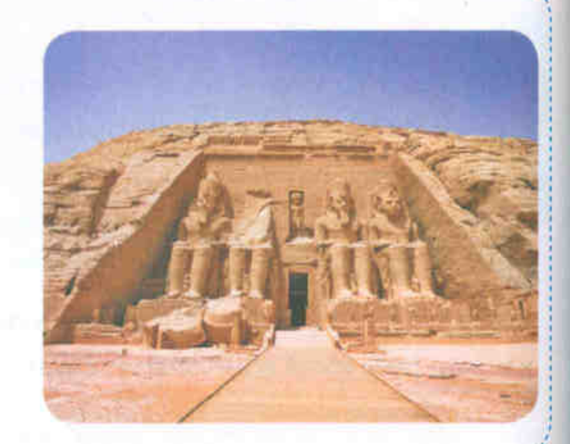
Did you know?

The White Desert is in Egypt. There are lots of amazing natural chalk* landscapes in the White Desert. The rocks are shaped like chicken, mushrooms, tents, and ice cones*. There are also lots of hot springs* in the White Desert. Tourists from around the world come to visit it.



I can find it out!

There are lots of unusual, interesting places to visit in Egypt like Temples of Abu Simbel. The queen and the king are carved in the mountain. People who live near unusual places can benefit from tourists, but tourists can sometimes harm the historical places.



الترجمة:

• تتحدث الوحده الرابعة عن المناظر الطبيعية المختلفة في مصر وكيفية الحفاظ عليها آمنة، ونظيفة من خلال أشياء مثل السياحة البيئية والتحكم في تغير المناخ. إنها أيضًا عن كيف تكون إيجابيًا وتساعد المجتمع.

• تقع الصحراء البيضاء في مصر. هناك العديد من المناظر الطبيعية الطباشيرية المدهشة في الصحراء البيضاء. الصخور تشبه أشكال الدجاج، الفطر (المشروم)، الخيام، وأقماع الثلج. يوجد أيضًا العديد من الينابيع الساخنة في الصحراء البيضاء. يأتي السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم لزيارتها.

• هناك العديد من الأماكن النادرة، المثيرة للاهتمام لزيارتها في مصر، مثل معابد أبو سمبل الصخرية. الملك والملكة منحوتان في الجبل. يمكن للأشخاص الذين يعيشون بالقرب من الأماكن النادرة الاستفادة من السياح، ولكن السياح يمكنهم بعض الأحيان أن يضروا الأماكن التاريخية.

chalk طباشير	cones أقماع	springs ينابيع




STUDY

Lesson 1

My visit to Elephantine Island




Main vocabulary



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



mountain
جبل



lake
بحيرة



waterfall
شلال



forest
غابة



coral reefs
الشعاب المرجانية



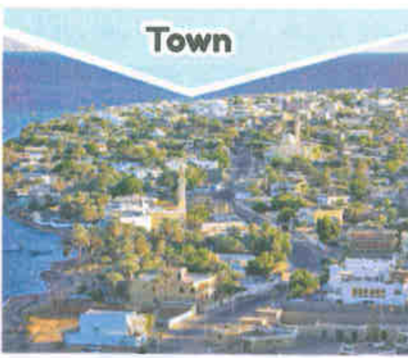
island
جزيرة

Egyptian cities, towns, and villages مدن، قرى وبلدات مصرية



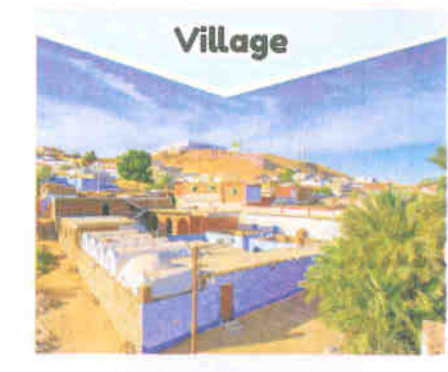
City

Alexandria
مدينه الإسكندرية



Town

Dahab
دهب



Village

Nubian village
قرية نوبية



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) لا ينطق (silent) كما في (island) .

Extra vocabulary

postcard	بطاقة بريدية	botanical (adj.)	نباتى	temple	معبد
fantastic (adj.)	رائع	shape	شكل	boat	قارب
part	جزء	history	تاريخ	museum	متحف
rare (adj.)	نادر	calendar	تقويم	reign	فترة الحكم
calm (adj.)	هادئ	traffic	المرور	sunset	غروب الشمس
particularly	خصوصًا	felucca	فلوكة (قارب صغير)	brightly	بشكل ساطع
Nile	نهر النيل	tombs	مقابر		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعــال منتظمــة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
miss	يشتاق	missed	travel	يسافر	traveled
decorate	يزين	decorated	look	ينظر	looked
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	find	يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

in fact	في الواقع / في الحقيقة	After that	بعد ذلك
long walks	المشي لمسافات طويلة	Can't wait to see you soon!	لا أطيق (أتحمل) الانتظار لرؤيتك قريبًا!

Vocabulary Check

"Elephantine Island" might have received its name from the shape of the rounded rocks along the banks of the island, which look like an elephant.

ربما تلقت جزيرة إلفنتين اسمها من شكل الصخور المستديرة على طول ضفاف الجزيرة ، والتي تشبه الفيل.

Check point

Unscramble and write: أعد الترتيب واكتب:

1. ocarl efres ....



2. ftawerall ....



3. timonuna ....

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Aswan Botanical Garden
حديقة أسوان النباتية



Temple of Philae
معبد فيلة





Tombs of the Nobles
مقابر النبلاء

Hi Dalia!
How are you? I'm missing you! I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots[1] to see. Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. – we think it's the shape!
Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. In fact, all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the Aswan Museum. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very rare[2] calendar from the reign[3] of Thutmose III.
But it's not only about history – it's a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet, and the air is clean. We can go for long walks. There are no forests but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The sunsets[4] are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. We were walking in one of the Nubian villages this morning. They have beautiful brightly decorated houses[5]. We had lunch there looking at the Nile. Tomorrow is our last morning so we're going to walk to the Tombs of the Nobles through the desert. I'll be so sad to leave.
Can't wait to see you soon!
Nagwa

(1) الكثير
(2) نادر
(3) فترة الحكم
(4) غروب الشمس
(5) منازل مزينة

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

	True	False
1 Elephantine Island is in Aswan.	( )	( )
2 They traveled by boat to the island.	( )	( )
3 The houses in the Nubian villages are decorated.	( )	( )

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:

- أهلا داليا!
- كيف حالك؟ أنا أشتاق لكِ! أنا على جزيرة إلفنتين وهى المكان الأكثر روعة! إنها فى أسوان وهناك الكثير لرؤيته. سافرت بالقارب إلى الجزيرة مع أصدقائى . كنا نحاول فهم اسم «إلفنتين» نحن نعتقد أنه شكل الجزيرة!
- جزيرة إلفنتين هى أقدم جزء فى أسوان. فى الواقع، الجزيرة كلها مليئة بالتاريخ. وبعد ذلك، ذهبنا إلى متحف أسوان. وكنا ننظر لكل الأشياء القديمة من الجزيرة عندما عثرنا على تقويم نادر جدًا من فترة حكم تحتمس الثالث.
- لكن الأمر لا يتعلق فقط بالتاريخ – لكنه مكان جميل وهادئ. لا يوجد ازدحام مرور، ولذا فهو هادئ جدًا، والهواء نقى. يمكننا المشى لمسافات طويلة. لا توجد غابات ولكن يوجد الكثير من الأشجار، لذلك فهى خضراء إلى حد ما. غروب الشمس رائع، خاصة من الفلوكة. هذا الصباح كنا نسير فى قرية من القرى النوبية. فهى تحتوى على منازل جميلة مزينة بألوان مشرقة. تناولنا الغداء هناك ونحن ننظر إلى النيل. غدًا آخر صباح لنا لذلك سنسير إلى مقابر النبلاء عبر الصحراء سوف أكون حزينة جدًا للمغادرة.

لا أطيق الانتظار لرؤيتك قريبًا!
نجوى




Lesson 1

12



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب: 4

1  2  3  4 

....



2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 4

A

1. I was traveling ...
2. The sunsets are fantastic ...
3. The Nubian villages have beautiful ...
4. We're going to walk to the Tombs ...

B

( ) of the Nobles through the desert.

( ) by boat to the Island.

( ) particularly from a felucca.

( ) brightly decorated houses.



3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً صحيحة: 4

1. go – Nagwa – Where – did?

....

2. the oldest – Island – of Aswan – Elephantine – part – is.

....

3. is – There – waterfall – the island – a beautiful – on.

....

4. Island – is – The – a beautiful – Elephantine – place.

....

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child write the words. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب الكلمات.

(2) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.

(3) Help your child re-arrange to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 1







1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

like – did – fun – Island

Sama : Where .... you go, Amira?

Amira: I went to the Elephantine .... with my family.

Sama : Did you .... it?

Amira: Yes, I did. We had a lot of ....





2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. Elephantine (Waterfall – Island – River) is the most fantastic place.
2. They found a very rare (village – calendar – forest) from the reign of Thutmose III.
3. There are no (houses – islands – forests), but there are lots of trees.
4. We can see beautiful decorated houses in (Dahab – Alexandria – Nubia).





3 Look and write a paragraph of 30 – 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 4

"A trip to Aswan"

went – island – museum – Nubian

....

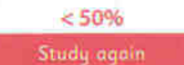
....

....

....







< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



STUDY

Lesson 2
What were you doing yesterday?





A Language Focus





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

We use the past continuous for something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.

يستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر للتحدث عن شيء حدث واستمر لفترة من الوقت فى الماضى.

Form

Affirmative: الإثبات

I/He/She/It/فاعل مفرد	was	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing).......... .
You/We/They/فاعل جمع	were	



e.g.



She was cooking yesterday at 6 o'clock.



We were playing football yesterday at 2 o'clock.

Negative: النفى

I/He/She/It/فاعل مفرد	wasn't	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing).......... .
You/We/They/فاعل جمع	weren't	



e.g.



She wasn't sleeping yesterday at 6 pm.



The tigers weren't drinking water yesterday.

Question: السؤال

Yes/No questions

Was	I/he/she/it/فاعل مفرد	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing).......... ?
Were	you/we/they/فاعل جمع	

Yes,	singular/plural subject	was/were.
No,		wasn't/weren't.

e.g.



A: Was she writing in her book?
B: Yes, she was.



A: Were they eating lunch?
B: No, they weren't.

Wh- question

Question word	I/he/she/it/فاعل مفرد	was	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing).......... ?
	you/we/they/فاعل جمع	were	

Subject	was	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing).......... .
	were	

e.g.



A: What was she doing at 6 am yesterday?
B: She was having breakfast.

Tip! Don't forget how to make the -ing form. If the verb ends:

لا تنس كيفية صنع/تكوين الـ - ing لو انتهى الفعل بـ :

- with -e: make – making   take – taking
- with consonant + vowel + consonant: swim – swimming
  shop – shopping

Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. They (were – is – was) learning English yesterday at 10 am.
2. A: (Was – Are – Were) he playing tennis yesterday at 10 am?
   B: Yes, he was.
3. What (was – were – is) the children doing at 10 am yesterday?

Parents' tips
Help your child use the past continuous tense correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر بطريقة صحيحة.

B Climate change



Listen and say: استمع، وقل:

Main vocabulary

climate change التغير المناخى	greenhouse gases غازات الاحتباس الحرارى	suitable (adj.) مناسب
atmosphere الغلاف الجوى	normal weather طقس طبيعى	livestock farming تربية الماشية
methane غاز الميثان	carbon dioxide غاز ثانى أكسيد الكربون	

Extra vocabulary

temperature درجة الحرارة	Earth الأرض	weather طقس	scientists علماء
period فترة (مدة)	factories مصانع	transportation وسائل النقل	heat حرارة
space الفضاء	water vapor بخار الماء	results نتائج	level مستوى
enough (adj.) كافٍ			

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعـــال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
change يتغير	changed	happen يحدث	happened
stop يتوقف	stopped	cause يسبب	caused

Expressions and Phrases

over the past 20 years خلال العشرين سنة الأخيرة	over a long period of time على مدى فترة طويلة من الزمن

Reasons for climate change	Results of climate change
 Pollution from factories التلوث الناتج من المصانع	 Animals may lose their food because plants die. قد تفقد الحيوانات طعامها بسبب موت النباتات.
 Pollution from transportation التلوث الناتج من وسائل المواصلات	Sea level rises, so people can lose their homes. ارتفاع منسوب مياه البحر، لذلك من الممكن أن يفقد الناس منازلهم.
 Building things أعمال البناء	
 Livestock farming تربية الماشية	The climate becomes too hot. We don't have enough rain and our crops can't grow. يصبح المناخ حارًا جدًا، ولن يكون لدينا مطر كافٍ، ولن تستطيع محاصيلنا النمو.

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the words and say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.

Climate change

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Greenhouse gases are important to keep our planet at the suitable[1] temperature for life. One hundred years ago, the Earth was getting a little warmer [2], and the atmosphere[3] was changing a little. But over the past 20 years, changes are happening faster and faster.



Scientists think that people are causing climate change - a change to the normal[4] weather of the Earth over a long period of time. We produce too many greenhouse gases through factories, transportation, building things, and livestock farming[5]. The greenhouse gases now keep more of the sun's heat inside the Earth, and stop this heat from going back to the space. So the Earth's temperature goes up[6].

Greenhouse gases are gases like carbon dioxide, water vapor, and methane. So, what are the results of climate change?

- Animals may lose their food because plants die.
- Sea level rises, so people can lose their homes.
- The climate becomes too hot. We don't have enough rain and our crops can't grow.

(1) مناسب
(2) تزداد دفئًا قليلًا
(3) الغلاف الجوى
(4) طبيعى / عادى
(5) تربية الماشية
(6) ترتفع درجات الحرارة

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

	True	False
1 The Earth's temperature is changing faster and faster.	( )	( )
2 Animals and plants are causing climate change.	( )	( )
3 Carbon dioxide and methane are greenhouse gases.	( )	( )

Parents' tips
Help your child read the passage correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة:
غازات الاحتباس الحرارى مهمة للحفاظ على درجة حرارة الكوكب ملائمة للحياة. من مائة عام مضت، كانت درجة الحرارة أدفأ قليلًا والغلاف الجوى يتغير قليلًا. ولكن فى العشرين سنة الماضية أصبحت تلك التغيرات تحدث أسرع فأسرع.
يقول العلماء إن البشر هم السبب فى حدوث تغير المناخ الذى حدث لدرجات الحرارة الطبيعية على الأرض على مدار مدة زمنية طويلة. يقوم البشر بإنتاج الكثير من الغازات من خلال المصانع والنقل والتشييد وتربية الماشية. تقوم غازات الاحتباس الحرارى الآن بحبس معظم حرارة الشمس داخل الأرض وتمنعها من الخروج إلى الفضاء وبالتالى ترتفع درجة حرارة الأرض. ثانى أكسيد الكربون وبخار الماء والميثان من أمثلة غازات الاحتباس الحرارى. ما هى نتائج الاحتباس الحرارى؟

- قد تفقد الحيوانات طعامها بسبب موت النباتات.
- يرتفع منسوب مياه البحر لذا فقد يفقد الناس منازلهم.
- تصبح درجات الحرارة عالية جدًا. ولا يوجد مطر كاف لتنمو المحاصيل.



C Greenhouse effect

Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

greenhouse	صوبة زراعية	effect	تأثير
tropical plants	نباتات استوائية	blanket	بطانية

Extra vocabulary

problem	مشكلة	difficult (adj.)	صعب
warm (adj.)	دافئ	natural (adj.)	طبيعي
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	surface	سطح
planet	كوكب	better (adj.)	أفضل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
explain يشرح	explained	help يساعد	helped
allow يسمح	allowed	stop يتوقف	stopped
shine يلمع	shined		
Irregular verbs		**الأفعال غير المنتظمة**	
make يصنع	made	keep يحافظ على	kept
grow يزرع	grew		

Expressions and Phrases

What's the matter?	ماذا بك؟/ما الأمر؟	feel worried	يشعر بالقلق
quite difficult	صعبة إلى حد ما	go out of	يخرج من

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the words and say them correctly. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Why can't Laila do her homework?







Mom: Laila, what's the matter?
ليلى، ما الأمر؟



Laila: Hi Mom. I'm feeling worried. I can't do my homework.
أهلًا أمي. أنا أشعر بالقلق، لا أستطيع أداء واجباتي المنزلية.



Mom: What's the problem? ما هي المشكلة؟





Laila: I have to explain the greenhouse effect and it's quite difficult.
يجب أن أشرح تأثير الاحتباس الحراري وهو أمر صعب إلى حد ما.



Mom: OK, let me help. You know what a greenhouse is, don't you? It's made of glass so it keeps all the plants inside it warm. This means that in cold countries, we can grow vegetables like tomatoes and tropical plants. The temperature inside doesn't change and the plants grow.

حسنًا، دعيني أساعدك. أنتِ تعرفين ما هي الصوبة الزجاجية، أليس كذلك؟ إنها مصنوعة من الزجاج لذلك فهي تحافظ على تدفئة جميع النباتات الموجودة بداخلها . هذا يعني أنه في البلدان الباردة يمكننا زراعة الخضراوات مثل الطماطم والنباتات الاستوائية. الحرارة بداخلها لا تتغير والنباتات تنمو .



Laila

Yes, but why is that the same as climate change?

نعم، ولكن لماذا هذا مثل تغيير المناخ؟



Mom

Well, we have a natural greenhouse effect on Earth. There are gases in the atmosphere that keep Earth warm so we can live on it. These are greenhouse gases.
But now we have more and more of the greenhouse gases and the Earth is warming up too much.

حسنًا، نحن لدينا تأثير طبيعى مشابه للصوبات الزجاجية على الأرض. يوجد غازات فى الغلاف الجوى تحافظ على دفء الأرض حتى نتمكن من العيش عليها. هذه هى غازات الاحتباس الحرارى، ولكن الآن أصبح لدينا غازات أكثر وأكثر بحيث تدفئ الأرض كثيرًا.

Laila

But why is it like a greenhouse?

لكن لماذا هذا مثل الصوبة الزراعية؟



Mom

The greenhouse gases work like a blanket around Earth. Greenhouse gases allow the sun's light to shine onto the Earth's surface, but they stop the heat of the sun from going out of the Earth to space, and they make the planet too hot.

تعمل غازات الاحتباس الحرارى كغطاء حول الأرض بأكملها. فهى تسمح لضوء الشمس أن يسطع على الأرض، ولكنها تمنع الحرارة من الخروج للفضاء وبالتالى ترتفع درجة حرارة الكوكب.

Laila

Thanks, Mom! I understand the greenhouse effect better now!

شكرًا أمى! أنا أفهم تأثير الاحتباس الحرارى أفضل الآن!

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

Language Functions

1 Asking about a problem: السؤال عن مشكلة:

What's the matter?/What's the problem? ما الأمر؟/ما المشكلة؟

e.g. A: What's the matter?

B: I feel sad. I didn't win the game.

2 Asking about reason: السؤال عن السبب:

A: Why ....? لماذا.............؟
B: Because + the reason .... لأن + السبب.............

e.g. A: Why are you sad?

B: Because I lost my toy.

Note

"The greenhouse effect" is a process in which greenhouse gases stop the sun's heat from going from Earth to space and raises the Earth's temperature.

ظاهرة الاحتباس الحرارى هى عملية يتم فيها منع أشعة الشمس من الخروج من الأرض إلى الفضاء وهذا يرفع درجة حرارة الأرض.

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	The greenhouse is made of wood.	( )	( )
2	Gases in the atmosphere keep the Earth warm.	( )	( )
3	Humans are producing too many greenhouse gases.	( )	( )



Lesson 2


15

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Look and put C (Cause) or R (Result): انظر وضع C (سبب) أو R (نتيجة): 6



2 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 5



climate – transportation – levels – faster – gases

Greenhouse gases, factories, ..., building things, and livestock farming are causing .... change. Greenhouse .... make the temperature go up .... and faster. Climate change is causing animals to lose their food, sea .... rise, and crops can't grow.

3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4




1. is – warmer – The – getting – Earth.
   ....
2. is – the – matter – What?
   ....
3. a natural – effect – greenhouse – have – We.
   ....
4. like – a – blanket – The – greenhouse – work – gases.
   ....



Parents' tips

(1) Help your child look and put (C) or (R): ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويضع (C) أو (R).
(2) Help your child fill in gaps. ساعد طفلك أن يملأ الفراغات.
(3) Help your child re-arrange to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.

TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 2



13

Listening

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

was – playing – wasn't – fun

Ahmed : Were you .... football?
Hany : Yes, I ....
Ahmed : Was it ....?
Hany : No, it ....



Reading

2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4



1. We (were – was – is) making a cake yesterday at 2 pm.
2. The Earth's temperature (goes up – goes down – stops) because of climate change.
3. A greenhouse is made of (paper – glass – cloth).
4. A: (Was – Are – Were) he singing a song? B: No, he wasn't.



Writing

3 Look and write a paragraph of 30-40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5

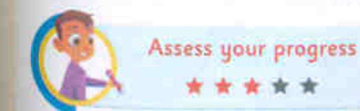


"Climate change"

Earth – people – gases – methane

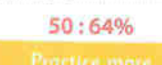


....
....
....
....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!





STUDY



Lesson 3



A ECO-TOURISM السياحة البيئية





Listen and say: استمع، وقل:

Main vocabulary

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	environment	البيئة	hotel	فندق
wildlife	حياة برية	local people	السكان المحليون	local culture	الثقافة المحلية
coral reef	شعب مرجانية	pollution	تلوث		

Extra vocabulary

tour guide	مرشد سياحى	exciting (adj.)	شيق - ممتع	tourism	سياحة
plane	طائرة	comfortable (adj.)	مريح	Hurghada	الغردقة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعـــال منتظـمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled	cause	يسبب	caused
stay	يبقى / يمكث	stayed	preserve	يحافظ على	preserved
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
pay	يدفع	paid	dive	يغطس	dove



Definitions

Eco-	صديق للبيئة	means relating to the environment e.g. eco-tourism	المتعلقة (المرتبطة) بالبيئة

Good things about tourism ✓



1. It gives jobs for local people.
   توفر وظائف للأشخاص المحليين.
2. It helps people learn about new cultures.
   تساعد الناس فى تعلم ثقافات جديدة.

Bad things about tourism ✗



1. It creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.
   تخلق الكثير من غاز ثانى أكسيد الكربون خلال رحلات الطائرات.
2. It damages the natural environment.
   تدمر البيئه الطبيعية.
3. It damages historical places or monuments.
   تدمر الأماكن التاريخية والمعالم الأثرية.

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the new words and say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات الجديدة ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.





Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Presenter: Hello, Sherif. Thank you for coming to talk to us. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada. Tell us about eco-tourism, please. What is it?
أهلًا شريف. نشكرك على مجيئك للتحدث إلينا. شريف مرشد سياحى فى الغردقة. أخبرنا عن السياحة البيئية من فضلك، ماهى؟



Sherif: Hello, Dalia. Eco-tourism is very exciting. It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.
أهلا داليا. السياحة البيئية شيقة جدًا. هى ذلك النوع من السياحة الذى يهتم بالبيئة والسكان المحليين.

Presenter: How does it help the environment and people?
كيف تساعد البيئة والناس؟







Sherif: Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution planes cause. They travel by train, on foot, or by bike.
السياح البيئيون لا يحبون السفر بالطائرة لأنها تسبب تلوثًا. ولكنهم يسافرون بالقطار، سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجة.

Presenter: I see. Where do they stay?
أفهم ذلك. أين يمكثون؟



Sherif: They don't like big hotels. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.
إنهم لا يفضلون الفنادق الكبيرة. يمكثون فى الفنادق الصغيرة المحلية أو يدفعون مقابل البقاء فى منازل السكان.

Presenter: What do they do when they travel?
ماذا يفعلون عندما يسافرون؟



Sherif



They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

يحبون أن يتعلموا عن مشروعات الحياة البيئية والثقافة المحلية.

Presenter

Can you give me an example?

هل يمكنك أن تعطى مثالًا؟

Sherif



Of course. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, preserving the coral reefs and the sea animals. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive and how they can be with the animals.

بالطبع. هنا فى مصر، لدينا بعض المشاريع فى منطقة البحر الأحمر لحماية الشعاب المرجانية والحيوانات البحرية. يأتى السياح إلى البحر الأحمر ويخبرهم المرشدون أين يمكنهم الغطس وكيف يمكنهم أن يكونوا مع الحيوانات.

Presenter

That sounds very good! Thank you for your time, Sherif.

يبدو هذا جيدًا جدًّا. شكرا على وقتك يا شريف.

Pros and cons of eco-tourism

Pros	Cons
• It helps the environment. السياحة البيئية تساعد البيئة.	• It's not as comfortable as normal tourism. السياحة البيئية ليست مريحة كالسياحة العادية.
• It helps local people. السياحة البيئية تساعد السكان المحليين.	• Wild animals may harm humans. الحيوانات البرية قد تؤذى البشر.
• It doesn't cost much money. السياحة البيئية لا تتطلب الكثير من النقود.	• Tourists may get lost in isolated places. قد يضيع السياح فى الأماكن المنعزلة.
• It looks after historical monuments and natural wildlife. السياحة البيئية تعتنى بـ المعالم التاريخية والحياة البرية الطبيعية.	

Parents' tips

Help your child read a text about eco-tourism correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ نصًا عن السياحة البيئية بطريقة صحيحة.



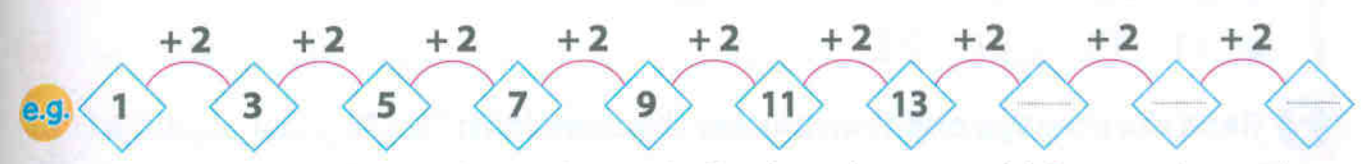
B Math

Look, read, and notice: انظر, اقرأ ولاحظ:

Number sequences التسلسل الرقمى

A number sequence is a list of numbers that are linked by a rule. If you work out the rule, you can find the next number in the sequence:

التسلسل الرقمى هو قائمة من الأرقام المرتبطة بقاعدة. إذا طبقت القاعدة، يمكنك إيجاد الرقم التالى فى التسلسل:



The difference between each number is 2. So the rule is to add 2 to each number.

الفرق بين كل رقم هو ٢. القاعدة هى إضافة ٢ إلى كل رقم.

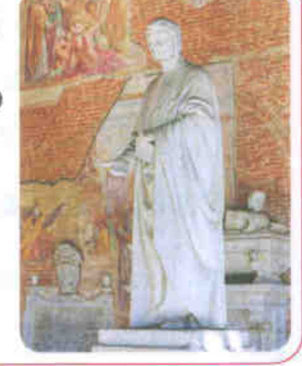
A number sequence can go up (we add numbers +) or down (we subtract numbers -):

يمكن أن يرتفع التسلسل الرقمى (نضيف أرقامًا +) أو ينخفض (نطرح الأرقام -):

e.g. (10 12 14 16 18 20 22 24) (+2)

e.g. (24 22 20 18 16 14 12 10) (–2)

The Fibonacci sequence



In this sequence, you find the next number if you add the two previous numbers together:

e.g. 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, ...



Write the missing numbers: اكتب الأرقام الناقصة:

1. 50 45 40 35 ....
2. 25 34 ...... 52 61 ......
3. 40 51 62 73 ....



Parents' tips

Help your child read and complete the number sequences correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل التسلسلات الرقمية بطريقة صحيحة.

PRACTICE Lesson 3

13

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Write the missing numbers: اكتب الأرقام الناقصة: 4

1. 28 .... 48 58 78
2. 20 .... 40 .... 60 70
3. 8 12 16 28
4. 11 15 19 23 ....

2 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Tourism can be helpful to many countries. It gives jobs for local people, and it can help people to learn about new cultures. Sometimes, tourism can be bad for many countries. Tourism can damage the natural environment and historical places, or monuments. Tourism can also create too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. Many people are trying eco-tourism, because it looks after the environment and the people.

A Tick (True or False):

	True	False
1 Tourism is not important to many countries.	( )	( )
2 Tourism gives jobs for local people.	( )	( )
3 Plane journeys are good for the environment.	( )	( )

B Answer the following questions:

4. Why can tourism be bad for many countries? ....
5. Why are people trying eco-tourism? ....

3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 4

1. like – travel – Eco-tourists – bikes – by – to.
....
2. Egypt – does – help – How – tourism?
....
3. the – look – Eco-tourists – after – wildlife.
....
4. create – journeys – Plane – much – too – dioxide – carbon.
....

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child complete the number sequence.
(2) Help your child read the passage and answer.
(3) Help your child re-arrange to write correct sentences or questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يكمل تسلسل الأرقام.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.




TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 3





13



1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

countries – local – environment – tourism

Mariam : How does .... help many countries?
Lara : It gives jobs for .... people.
Mariam : How does eco-tourism help many ....?
Lara : It looks after the ....



2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

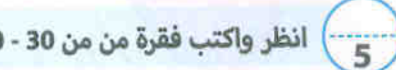


1. Eco-tourism is (good – harmful – hard) for the environment.
2. The coming number in this sequence: 10, 20, 30, ... is (45 - 40 - 50).
3. Eco-tourists stay in small, local (coral – environment – hotels).
4. A (tourist – guide – hotel) can tell you where to dive to be with animals.



3 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5

"Eco-tourism"



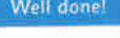
looks – hotels – local – culture

....
....
....
....





Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!





STUDY Lesson 4





A Pronunciation





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشِر وقل:

Three-consonant blends

Three-consonant words are made up of three-consonant letters that are not disconnected by any vowels, and each consonant's sound is still heard.

الكلمات ذات الثلاث حروف الساكنة تتكون من ثلاثة حروف ساكنة لا يتم فصلها بحرف متحرك، وكل صوت ساكن لا يزال مسموعًا.

scr



screw مسمار | scratch يخدش | screen شاشة | scream يصرخ

str



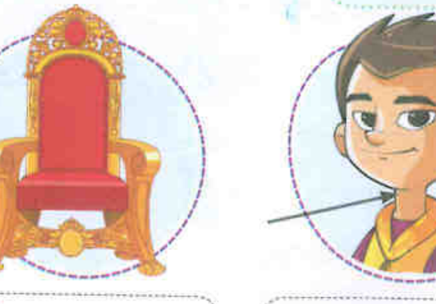






strawberry فراولة | string خيط | street شارع | strong قوي

thr



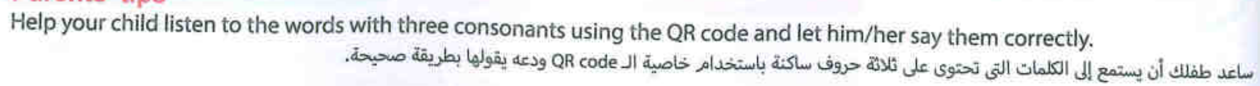








throne عرش | throat حلق | throw يرمي | three ثلاثة



Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the words with three consonants using the QR code and let him/her say them correctly.

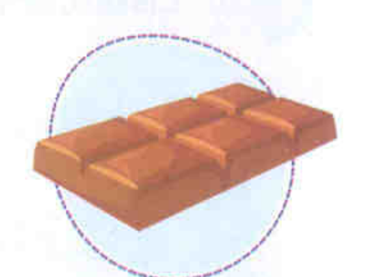
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التي تحتوي على ثلاثة حروف ساكنة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Words that can be misspelled: الكلمات التي يمكن أن تكون بها أخطاء إملائية:





milk لبن | cake كعكة | chocolate شوكولاتة









ice skating تزلج على الجليد | lake بحيرة | beans فول



belt حزام | mountain جبل | sneakers حذاء رياض

Words that can be misspelled: الكلمات التي يمكن أن يُخطأ في تهجئتها:

Correct spelling	The misspelled	Correct spelling	The misspelled
milk	milc	lake	lakke
chocolate	chokolate	mountain	mountaine
ice skating	ise skating	sneakers	sneekers

Check point

Listen and circle: استمع وضع دائرة:

1 strong – string 2 throne – throat 3 screen – scream

Parents' tips

Help your child spell and pronounce the words correctly.

ساعد طفلك على تهجئة الكلمات ونطقها بطريقة صحيحة.



I Help My Community



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشِرْ وقل:

Main vocabulary



community garden
حديقة عامة



messy
فوضوي (غير مرتب)



fruit seeds
بذور فاكهة



make friends
يكوّن صداقات



water
يسقي/يروي



weeds
حشائش ضارة



surprise
مفاجأة



glad
سعيد

Extra vocabulary

dirty (adj.)	متسخ	plants	نباتات	kind (adj.)	طيب
together	معًا	part	جزء	soil	تربة
harmful (adj.)	ضار	sunshine	أشعة الشمس	great (adj.)	رائع
ill (adj.)	مريض	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعـــال منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
invite	يدعو	invited	work	يعمل	worked
plant	يزرع	planted	remember	يتذكر	remembered
water	يسقي/يروي	watered	pick	يقطف	picked
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	dig	يحفر	dug
make	يصنع	made	take	يأخذ	took

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the new words and say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.

Maged and the community garden

The beginning



Maged's mom invited him to go to the community garden[1] with her. At first, he didn't like it. It was dirty and messy[2], and he thought he didn't like plants. But Maged is a kind boy and he went to help his mom.
Together, they worked in their part of the garden. They dug the soil. He and his mom planted their vegetable and fruit seeds.

(1) حديقة عامة
(2) غير مرتب

The middle

He made friends[3] with the other people at the community garden. After working in the garden, Maged and his new friends sometimes went to play football in the park.
He remembered what he learned about looking after plants at school. He watered[4] the plants every day to keep them healthy. He took out the weeds[5]– the harmful plants. He made sure the plants got lots of sunshine to help them grow.

(3) كوّن صداقات
(4) روى/سقى
(5) حشائش ضارة

The end

He started to love the garden and was very happy to go there every day. It was so great to see the plants get bigger and bigger. Every day there was a surprise[6], with a new tomato or some new beans.
When all the fruit and vegetables were ready, the best thing was picking everything. Maged and his mom took the beans, tomatoes, and strawberries to the people in the community – the older people and the people who were ill. They were so happy to receive all the delicious food and Maged felt very glad[7].
Now Maged loves the garden and teaches others about growing plants.

(6) مفاجأة
(7) سعيد/مسرور

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	Maged is a kind boy.	( )	( )
2	Maged made friends with other people at the community garden.	( )	( )
3	Maged took the fruits and vegetables to himself.	( )	( )

Parents' tips
Help your child read the passage correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.
الترجمة:
ماجد والحديقة العامة
والدة ماجد دعته إلى أن يذهب معها إلى الحديقة العامة. في البداية لم تعجبه. فقد كانت متسخة وغير مرتبة. كما اعتقد أنه لا يحب النباتات. لكن ماجد ولد طيب ذهب لمساعدة والدته. عملا معًا في جزء من الحديقة. حفر التربة هو ووالدته وزرعا بذور الخضراوات والفاكهة.
كوّن ماجد صداقات مع الأشخاص الآخرين في الحديقة العامة، أحيانًا بعد العمل في الحديقة ماجد وأصدقاؤه الجدد يذهبون للعب كرة القدم في الحديقة. لقد تذكر ما تعلمه عن رعاية النباتات في المدرسة. كان يسقي النباتات كل يوم للحفاظ على صحتها. ينتزع الحشائش الضارة - النباتات السيئة. لقد تأكد من حصول النباتات على الكثير من أشعة الشمس لتساعدها على النمو.
بدأ يحب الحديقة وكان سعيدًا جدًا بالذهاب إلى هناك كل يوم. كان من الرائع رؤية النباتات تكبر أكثر وأكثر. كل يوم كان هناك مفاجأة، مع طماطم جديدة أو بعض الفول الجديد. عندما كانت جميع الفواكه والخضراوات جاهزة، كان قطفها جميعًا أفضل شيء. ماجد ووالدته قطفا الفول والطماطم والفراولة للناس في المجتمع - كبار السن والناس الذين كانوا مرضى. لقد كانوا سعداء للغاية لتلقي كل الطعام اللذيذ، وشعر ماجد بسعادة غامرة. الآن ماجد يحب الحديقة ويعلم الآخرين زراعة النباتات.

Lesson 4

12

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Look and write:

انظر واكتب:

4

1  2   3  4 

....

2 Read and circle the odd word out:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة:

4

1. watered – picked – garden – invited
2. cake – chocolate – strawberry – three
3. park – delicious – glad – kind
4. scratch – scream – sneakers – throw

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

4

A	B
1 I went ice skating ...	( ) in the community garden.
2 We watered the plants...	( ) with my friends.
3 Hany grows fruit seeds ...	( ) to older people in the community.
4 We give fruits and vegetables ...	( ) every day to keep them healthy.

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child write the words.
(2) Help your child read and circle the odd words.
(3) Help your child read and match.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب الكلمات.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع دائرة حول الكلمات المختلفة.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.



TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 4



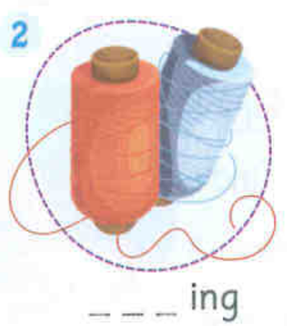
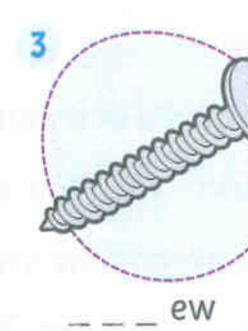
12

Listening

1 Listen and supply the missing letters:

استمع وأكمل الحروف الناقصة:

4

1  2  3  4 

_ _ _ one   _ _ _ ing   _ _ _ ew   _ _ _ awberry



Reading

2 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

1. My (screw – string – throat) hurts, I will see the doctor.
2. The farmer takes out the (flowers – weeds – birds) from the farm. They were harmful.
3. My brother loved the garden and was very (angry – sad – glad) to go there every day.
4. When something is (clean – healthy – messy), it's untidy and dirty.



Writing

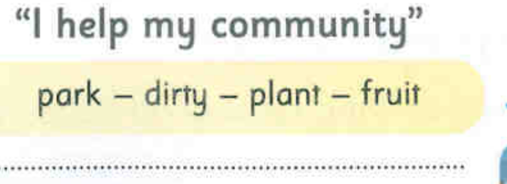


3 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words:

انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة:

4

"I help my community"



....
....
....
....







< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

STUDY



Lessons 5 & 6





Taba: My favorite eco-resort

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Eco-tourism in Egypt

Taba is an excellent[1] example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife[2] in Taba, like the Nubian ibex[3], and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment.

Camp in Sinai, Egypt
معسكر في سيناء، مصر

The local people are very friendly[4], so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating![5] Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking[6], and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges[7]. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

Nawamis Structure Sinai, Egypt
هيكل النواميس - سيناء، مصر

(1)	ممتاز
(2)	حياة برية
(3)	الوعل النوبي
(4)	ودود
(5)	ساحر/خلاب
(6)	التنزه
(7)	مساكن بيئية

REMEMBER

eco = relating to the environment — له علاقة بالبيئة.

e.g. eco-tourists, eco-lodges, eco-resort, eco-friendly

Parents' tips
Help your child read about Taba.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن طابا.
الترجمة:
السياحة البيئية في مصر: طابا هي المثال الممتاز لجزء من مصر حيث السياحة البيئية تعمل بشكل جيد. هناك يمكنك أن تجد الوديان، الجبال، الصحراء والبحر. يمكنك أن تجد حياة برية رائعة في طابا، مثل: الوعل النوبي والطيور النادرة. هذا جيد جدًا للسياح البيئيين لأنه يمكنهم الذهاب والاستمتاع بالبيئة. السكان المحليون ودودين جدًا. حتى يمكن للسياح البيئيين تناول وجبة معهم أو التحدث معهم عن ثقافتهم. إذا كنت تحب التاريخ، فهناك الكثير في طابا. هناك النواميس، قرية دائرية من المباني القديمة جدًا. إنها مذهلة! في طابا يمكن للسياح البيئيين الاستمتاع بالغوص، التنزه، والتخييم. يمكنهم البقاء في المخيمات والمساكن البيئية. يمكنك أن تجد كل شيء في طابا لقضاء عطلة رائعة!



Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

A flyer on an eco-holiday in Taba: نشرة إعلانية عن عطلة بيئية فى طابا:

Main heading — العنوان الرئيسي

Sub-heading — العنوان الفرعي

Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt

Enjoy the local culture
Visit Nawamis, a 6,000-year-old village.



استمتع بالثقافة المحلية
قم بزيارة قرية النواميس التي يبلغ عمرها ٦٠٠٠ عام.

Meet the local people
Talk to them about their way of life.

قابل السكان المحليين
تحدث معهم عن أسلوب حياتهم.

Stay in our comfortable huts
They are cool and eco-friendly.

ابق في أكواخنا المريحة
إنها رائعة وصديقة للبيئة.

Enjoy the wildlife
Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt! We have wonderful fish, birds, and animals.

استمتع بالحياة البرية
تعال وشاهد أروع الحياة البرية في مصر! لدينا أسماك وطيور وحيوانات رائعة.

Take part in exciting activities
You can hike, swim, and dive.

شارك في الأنشطة المثيرة
يمكنك التنزه والسباحة والغوص.

Photos — الصور

Sentences — الجمل

Parents' tips
Help your child read and notice the main and sub-headings.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويلاحظ العناوين الرئيسية والفرعية.



Steps of making a flyer: خطوات عمل نشرة إعلانية:



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

1. **Write the main heading.** - اكتب العنوان الرئيسى.
2. **Add short sub-headings.** - أضف عناوين فرعية مختصرة.
3. **Write one or two phrases on each sub-heading.** - اكتب جملة أو جملتين عن كل عنوان فرعى.
4. **Add or draw related photos.** - قم بإضافة أو رسم بعض الصور المتعلقة بالموضوع.

Look at this flyer of one eco-destination in Egypt:

انظر إلى هذه النشرة الإعلانية لوجهة بيئية واحدة فى مصر:


e.g.

Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt

Enjoy the historical monuments
Visit St. Catherine Mountain in Sinai.

Meet the local people
Talk to the Bedouin people about their way of life.



Stay in our comfortable small hotels or locals' houses
They are cool and eco-friendly.



Enjoy the wildlife
Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt. We have wonderful fish, birds, and animals.



Take part in exciting activities
You can hike, swim, and dive.



Parents' tips
Help your child read and notice the steps of making a flyer.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويلاحظ خطوات كتابة نشرة إعلانية.

Make a flyer about your favorite eco-destination:

قم بعمل نشرة إعلانية عن وجهتك البيئية المفضلة:

Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt

....
....
....

Picture (Paste here.)

....
....
....

Picture (Paste here.)

....
....
....
....

Picture (Paste here.)

....
....
....

Picture (Paste here.)

Parents' tips
Help your child read and notice the steps of making a flyer.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويلاحظ خطوات كتابة نشرة إعلانية.

REVIEW



Vocabulary

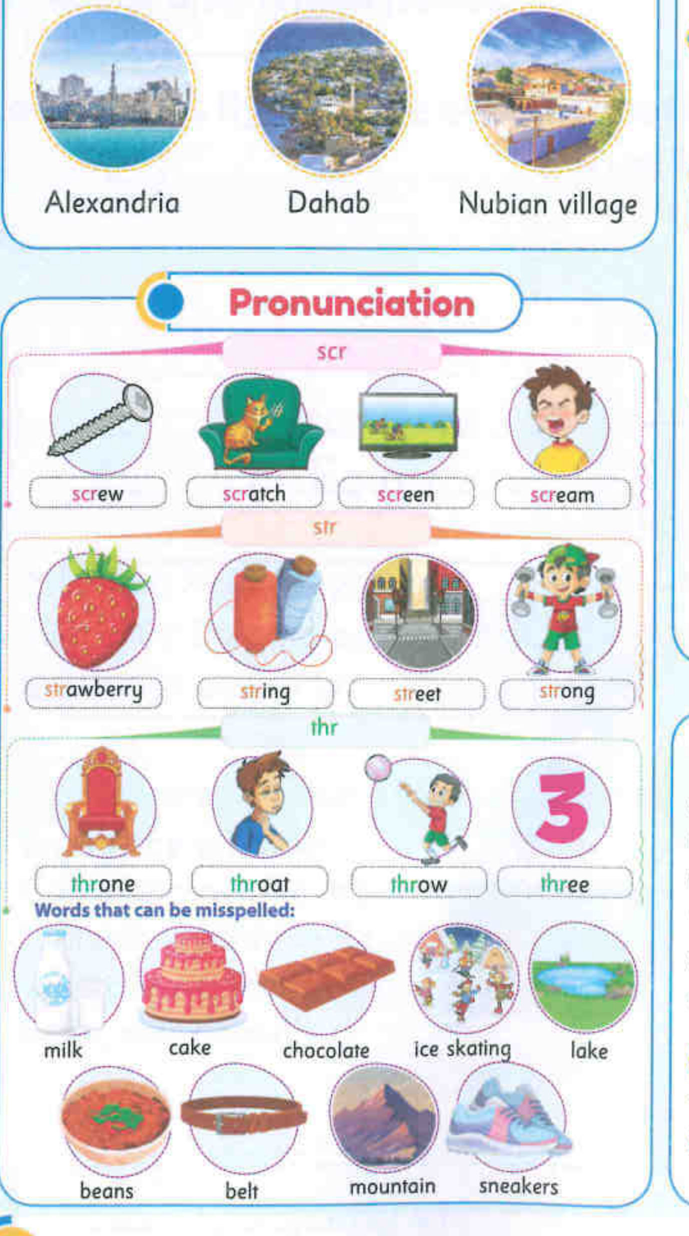
Natural landscapes

mountain | lake | waterfall

forest | coral reefs | island

Egyptian cities, towns and villages

Alexandria | Dahab | Nubian village



Pronunciation

scr: screw, scratch, screen, scream

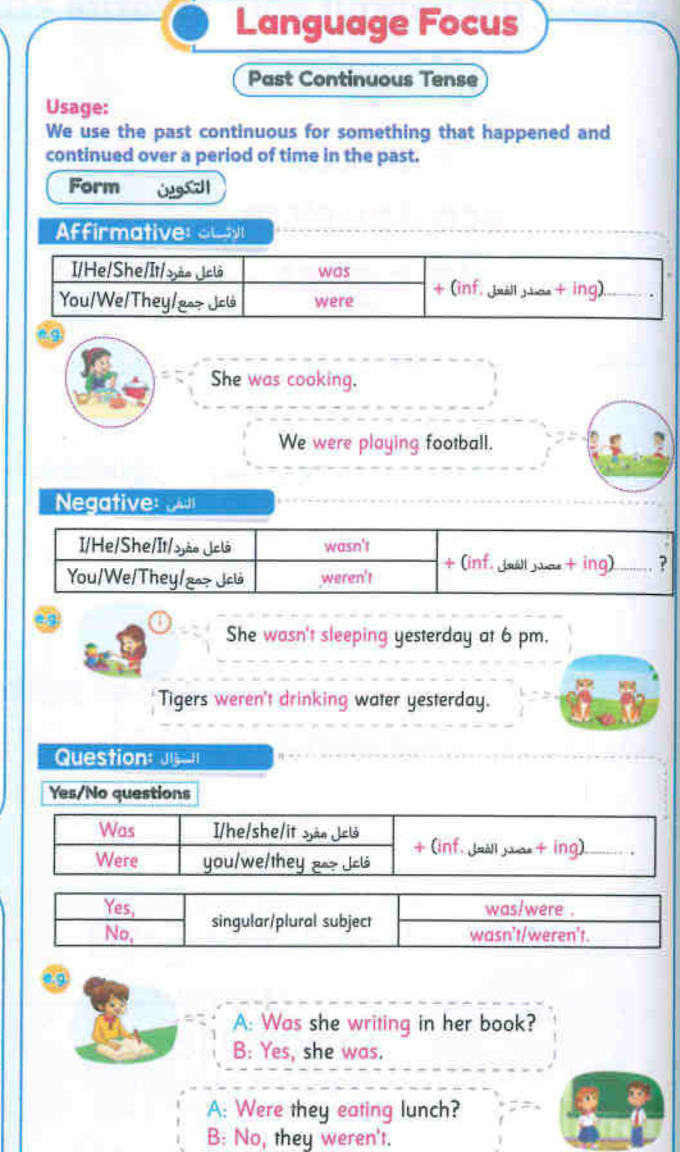
str: strawberry, string, street, strong

thr: throne, throat, throw, three

Words that can be misspelled:

milk, cake, chocolate, ice skating, lake, beans, belt, mountain, sneakers

Language Focus



Past Continuous Tense

Usage:
We use the past continuous for something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.

Form التكوين

Affirmative: الإثبات

I/He/She/It/فاعل مفرد	was	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing).......
You/We/They/فاعل جمع	were	

e.g.
She was cooking.
We were playing football.

Negative: النفي

I/He/She/It/فاعل مفرد	wasn't	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing)....... ?
You/We/They/فاعل جمع	weren't	

e.g.
She wasn't sleeping yesterday at 6 pm.
Tigers weren't drinking water yesterday.

Question: السؤال

Yes/No questions

Was	I/he/she/it فاعل مفرد	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing)....... .
Were	you/we/they فاعل جمع	

Yes, / No,	singular/plural subject	was/were . / wasn't/weren't.

e.g.
A: Was she writing in her book?
B: Yes, she was.

A: Were they eating lunch?
B: No, they weren't.

Math

Number sequence

A number sequence is a list of numbers that are linked by a rule. If you work out the rule, you can find the next number in the sequence.

1 – 3 – 5 – 7 – 9 – 11 – 13 – 15

A number sequence can go up (we add numbers +) or down (we subtract numbers -):

e.g.

10 12 14 16 18 20 22 24 (+ 2)

24 22 20 18 16 14 12 10 (- 2)

Check Your Vocabulary



Lesson 1

شلال	....	جبل	....
غابة	....	بحيرة	....
الإسكندرية	....	شعاب مرجانية	....
دهب	....	جزيرة	....
قرية نوبية	....	مقابر	....

Lesson 2

تربية الماشية	....	صوبة زجاجية	....
الغلاف الجوى	....	غازات الاحتباس الحرارى	....
التغير المناخى	....	بخار الماء	....
مناسب	....	غاز الميثان	....
درجة الحرارة	....	علماء	....
ثانى أكسيد الكربون	....	حرارة	....

Lesson 3

البيئة	....	شعب مرجانية	....
الحياة البرية	....	فندق	....
تلوث	....	سائح	....

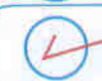
Lesson 4

خيط	....	فراولة	....
مسمار	....	يخدش	....
حلق	....	عرش	....
شارع	....	شاشة	....
ثلاثة	....	يرمى	....
يصرخ	....	قوى	....
كعكة	....	حليب	....
تزلج على الجليد	....	شوكولاتة	....
فول	....	بحيرة	....
جبل	....	حزام	....
حذاء رياضى	....	فوضوى (غير مرتب)	....

WRITING TIME

Check your writing

 Use correct tenses, spelling, and punctuation marks.

 The paragraph should end with an ending sentence.

 **Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words:**

"A trip to Aswan"

went – Island – Museum – Nubian



I went to Aswan with my family. We visited the Elephantine Island. It was so beautiful and calm. We also went to the Aswan Museum. We saw lots of old things. After that, we went to a brightly decorated Nubian village.

"Climate change"

Earth – humans – gases – methane



The Earth is getting warmer. Humans are causing climate change. We produce lots of greenhouse gases. We produce carbon dioxide and methane. Gases make the temperature go up faster and faster. The climate becomes too hot.

"Eco-tourism"

looks – hotels – coral – culture



Eco-tourism looks after the environment. Eco-tourists like to stay in small local hotels or in people's houses. In Egypt, they look after the coral reefs. Tourists love to learn about local cultures. There are many places in Egypt that eco-tourists can visit.

"I help my community"

garden – messy – plants – seeds



Yesterday, I went to a community garden with my family. The garden was dirty and messy. We dug the soil and planted vegetables and fruit seeds. I made new friends at the community garden. Now the garden is full of green plants and looks nicer.



AL ADWAA TEST 1

 30





1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: (2)

worried – greenhouse – matter – homework

Mom : What's the ....?
Rana : I can't do my ....
Mom : Why are you feeling ....?
Rana : I have to explain the .... effect and it's quite difficult.



2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: (5)

A	B
1 You can find valleys, mountains, and the sea ...	( ) B: Yes, they were.
2 The next number in the sequence 15, 20, 25 ...	( ) in Taba.
3 The tourists were walking in ...	( ) in the community garden.
4 We planted vegetables and fruit seeds ...	( ) one of the Nubian villages this morning.
5 A: Were they studying science?	( ) is 30.



3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: (5)

Tourists – forests – oldest – calm – Island

Elephantine ....is an amazing place. It's in Aswan. .... come from all over the world to visit it. They can travel by boat to visit it. The island is the .... part of Aswan. The island is a beautiful .... place. There are no .... but there are lots of trees.



4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: (5)

My name is Yara. Last week at school, we learned about climate change. We learned that humans are causing the climate to change. Because we produce too many greenhouse gases and the Earth is getting warmer. Climate change is happening faster and faster in the last 20 years, and people around the world are seeing higher temperatures. Climate change makes the plants die, sea levels rise, and not have enough rain, and the crops die.



A Tick (True or False):

	True	False
1 Yesterday, they learned about climate change.	( )	( )
2 Animals are causing climate change.	( )	( )
3 We produce too many greenhouse gases.	( )	( )

B Answer the following questions:

4 What are people around the world seeing? ....

5 What does climate change do? ....

Writing

5 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 5

1 he – doing – homework – Was – his?

....

2 oldest – of Aswan – is – Elephantine – the – part – Island.

....

3 helps – Eco-tourism – environment – local.

....

4 having – they – Were – breakfast?

....

5 her – bedroom – She – in – was – sleeping.

....

6 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5

"I help my community"

garden – messy – plants – seeds

....

....

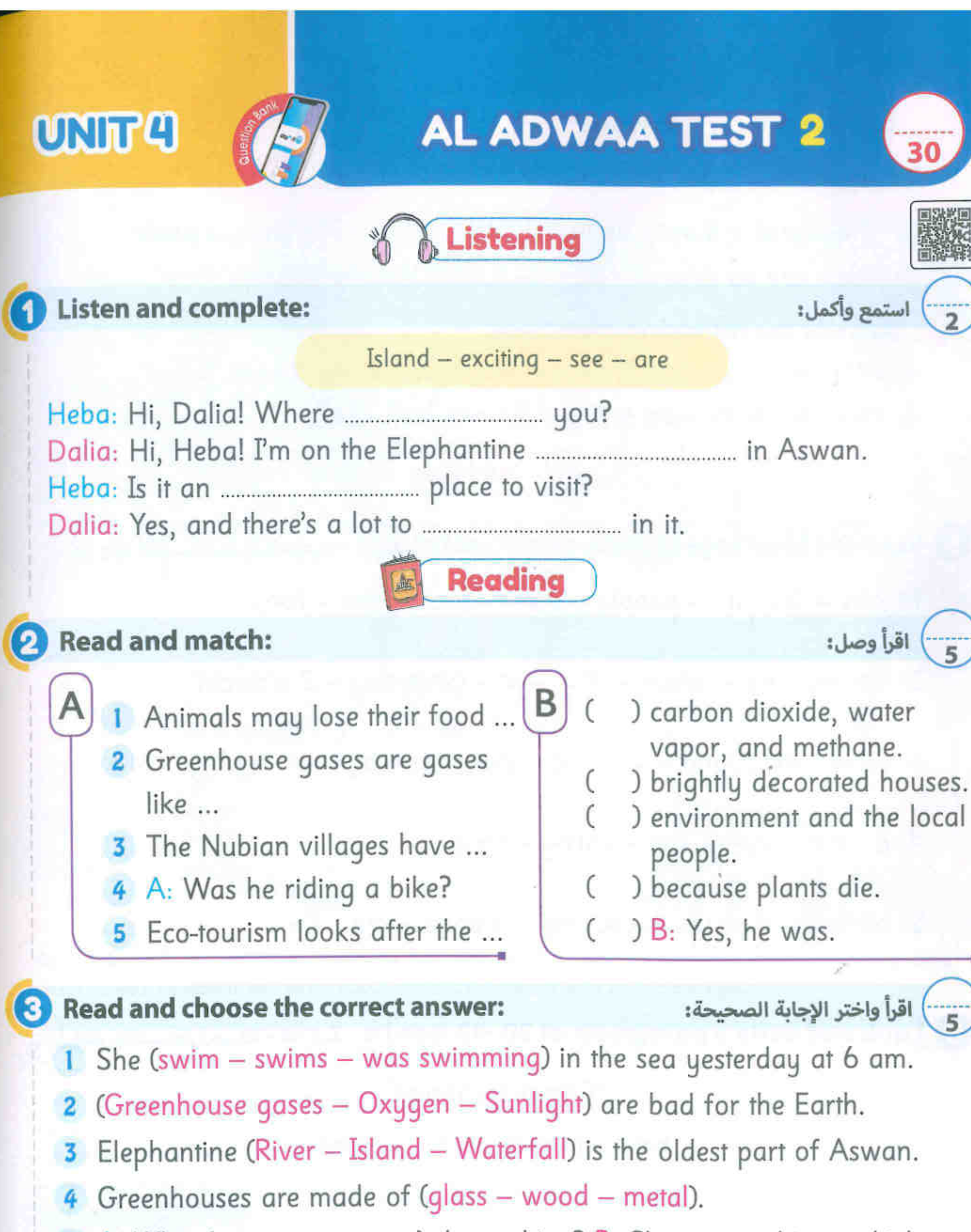
....

....

7 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 3

1 was amira singing a song ....

2 taba is an eco-tourism place in egypt ....



Listening

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 2

Island – exciting – see – are

Heba: Hi, Dalia! Where .... you?

Dalia: Hi, Heba! I'm on the Elephantine .... in Aswan.

Heba: Is it an .... place to visit?

Dalia: Yes, and there's a lot to .... in it.

Reading

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 5

A

1 Animals may lose their food ...

2 Greenhouse gases are gases like ...

3 The Nubian villages have ...

4 A: Was he riding a bike?

5 Eco-tourism looks after the ...

B

( ) carbon dioxide, water vapor, and methane.

( ) brightly decorated houses.

( ) environment and the local people.

( ) because plants die.

( ) B: Yes, he was.

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 5

1 She (swim – swims – was swimming) in the sea yesterday at 6 am.

2 (Greenhouse gases – Oxygen – Sunlight) are bad for the Earth.

3 Elephantine (River – Island – Waterfall) is the oldest part of Aswan.

4 Greenhouses are made of (glass – wood – metal).

5 A: What (were – are – was) she cooking? B: She was cooking a chicken.

4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: 5

My name is Sara. My favorite place in Egypt is the Elephantine Island in Aswan. It's the most fantastic place. It is a very beautiful and calm place. The Island is full of history. The Aswan Museum is full of old amazing things. There are no forests on the island but there are lots of trees. The sunsets are fantastic. People like to watch the sunsets from a felucca. People also like to visit the Nubian villages. They have beautiful brightly decorated houses.

A **Choose the correct word:**

1. Elephantine Island is in (Cairo – Aswan – Giza).
2. The Island is a very beautiful and (calm – bad – noisy) place.
3. There are no (trees – forests – sunsets) on the island.

B **Answer the following questions:**

4. What is the place that people like to watch the sunsets from? ....
5. How do the Nubian villages' houses look like? ....



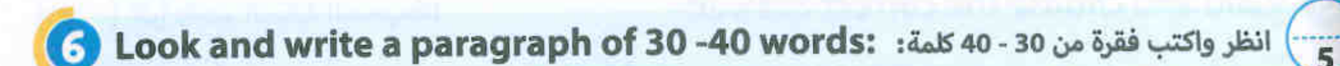
Writing



5 **Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences:** اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: (5)



1. jobs – Tourism – people – gives – local – the – for.
   ....
2. having – he – lunch – Was – at – yesterday – 3 o'clock?
   ....
3. were – the Island – We – to – traveling – by boat.
   ....
4. a cake – was – The – eating – king.
   ....
5. climate – Humans – causing – change – are.
   ....



6 **Look and write a paragraph of 30 -40 words:** انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: (5)

"Climate change"

Earth – humans – gases – methane

....
....
....
....



7 **Punctuate the following sentences:** ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: (3)

1. what s the matter ....
2. you can find many things in taba ....

Unit 5 Jobs we do

وظائف نقوم بها



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about different types of jobs in Ancient Egypt.
  - understand ecosystems.
  - learn about jobs in tourism.
  - practice using the present simple to talk about routines.
  - practice using "must" to talk about obligation.
  - understand and discuss a traditional tale.
  - learn to say words with diphthongs.
  - understand pie charts.
  - write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
  - make a poster about teamwork.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الوظائف في مصر القديمة.
  - يفهم النظم البيئية.
  - يتعرف على وظائف في مجال السياحة.
  - يتدرب على استخدام المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الروتين.
  - يتدرب على استخدام «يجب» للتحدث عن الإلزام.
  - يفهم ويناقش حكاية تقليدية.
  - يتعلم نطق الكلمات التي تحتوي على مزيج من حرفين متحركين.
  - يفهم المخططات الدائرية.
  - يكتب عن إيجابيات وسلبيات الوظائف المختلفة.
  - يقوم بعمل ملصق عن العمل الجماعي.

Life skills

Problem solving:
- What we need to survive.

Collaboration:
- make a poster about teamwork and how to work effectively in a team.
- How to work out a solution when you disagree with someone.

حل المشاكل:
- ما نحتاجه للبقاء على قيد الحياة.

التعاون:
- عمل ملصق عن العمل الجماعي وكيفية العمل بشكل فعال ضمن فريق.
- كيف تتوصل إلى حل عندما تختلف مع شخص ما.

Values

Independence:
- What you can do now to help you in the future.

الاستقلال:
- ما يمكنك فعله الآن لمساعدتك في المستقبل.

Warm up

Unit Five is about jobs in Ancient and Modern Egypt, and how these jobs help the community. It is also about the varied ecosystems we have in Egypt and how this variety makes Egypt so special.

Did you know?



More than 25% of people in Egypt work in farming. Farming brings a lot of income* to Egypt. The Egyptians are one of the first groups of people to practice agriculture on a large scale*. Ancient Egyptians grew staple* food crops, especially grains* such as wheat and barley, and industrial crops.

I can find it out!



Egypt has other popular jobs like* engineering, teaching, tourism, accounting,* marketing,* management, and medical jobs. Every job has different* responsibilities to help the community.

الترجمة

- تتحدث الوحدة الخامسة عن الوظائف فى مصر القديمة والحديثة، وكيف أن هذه الوظائف تساعد المجتمع. أنها تتحدث أيضًا عن أنظمة البيئة المتنوعة التى لدينا فى مصر. وكيف أن هذا التنوع يجعل مصر مميزة للغاية.
- أكثر من ٢٥٪ من الناس فى مصر يعملون فى الزراعة. تجلب الزراعة الكثير من الدخل لمصر. يعتبر المصريون من أوائل الجماعات التى مارست الزراعة على نطاق واسع. قام قدماء المصريين بزراعة المحاصيل الغذائية الأساسية، وخاصة الحبوب مثل القمح والشعير، والمحاصيل الصناعية.
- يوجد فى مصر وظائف أخرى شهيرة مثل الهندسة ، والتدريس ، والسياحة ، والمحاسبة ، والتسويق ، والإدارة ، والوظائف الطبية. كل وظيفة لها مسؤوليات مختلفة لمساعدة المجتمع.

income	دخل	scale	نطاق	staple	أساسى	grains	الحبوب
like	مثل	accounting	المحاسبة	marketing	التسويق	different	مختلفة

STUDY



Lesson 1

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

Main vocabulary





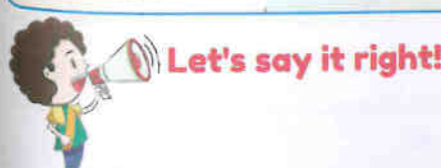
Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Definitions

	scribe كاتب	People with this job were very important in Ancient Egypt. They could write everything down. They kept records(1) and lists of important things. كان الأشخاص الذين شغلوا هذه الوظيفة مهمين للغاية فى مصر القديمة. يمكنهم كتابة كل شىء، فقد احتفظوا بسجلات وقوائم لأشياء مهمة.
	trader تاجر	People who did this job traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains. الناس الذين قاموا بهذا العمل سافروا صعودًا وهبوطًا فى النيل. كانوا يشترون ويبيعون أشياء مثل: الذهب والخشب والكتان والحبوب.
	craftsman حِرَفى	If you were good at making things, this was a good job for you. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold. إذا كنت جيدًا فى صنع الأشياء، فهذا العمل كان مناسبا لك. الأشخاص الذين عملوا فى هذه الوظيفة صنعوا أشياء من الطين والخشب والذهب.
	hieroglyphs اللغة الهيروغليفية	A system of writing which consisted of about 500 signs, written in rows and columns. People used it in Ancient Egypt. نظام كتابة كان يتكون من حوالى ٥٠٠ علامة، مكتوبة فى صفوف وأعمدة. استخدمه الناس فى مصر القديمة.
	doctor طبيب	Both men and women could do this job, too. You had to go to medical school to have this job. You had to look after people who were ill and make medicine. كان يمكن لكل من الرجال والنساء القيام بهذه الوظيفة أيضًا. كان عليك الذهاب إلى مدرسة الطب للحصول على هذه الوظيفة. كان عليك أن تعتنى بالمرضى وتصنع الدواء.

(1) سجلات



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (ci) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش) كما فى (Ancient).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) يُنطق /k/ (ك) كما فى (craftsman - doctor).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (ph) ينطقان /f/ (ف) كما فى (hieroglyphs).

Extra vocabulary

ancient (adj.)	قديم	job	وظيفة	fisherman	صياد سمك
baker	خباز	farmer	مزارع	economy	اقتصاد
field	حقل	crops	محاصيل	grains	حبوب
wheat	قمح	corn	ذرة	flax	الكتان
paintings	رسومات / لوحات	gold (adj.)	ذهبى (مصنوع من الذهب)	jewelry	مجوهرات
sculptures	منحوتات	clothes	ملابس	colorful (adj.)	مُلون / مبهج
pots	أوانٍ	craftspeople	الحرفيون	skillful (adj.)	ماهر
community	المجتمع	fewer (adj.)	أقل فى العدد	expensive (adj.)	غالٍ
outside	بالخارج	women	نساء	meals	وجبات
baskets	سلال	sandals	صنادل	pharaohs	فراعنة
famous (adj.)	مشهور	queen	ملكة	successful (adj.)	ناجح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
plant	يزرع	planted	weave	ينسج	weaved
respect	يحترم	respected	bake	يخبز	baked
learn	يتعلم	learned			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
spend	يقضى (وقتًا)	spent	sell	يبيع	sold

Expressions and Phrases

work hard	يعمل بجد	take care of	يعتنى بـ

Vocabulary Check

الأسماء المركبة هى التى يتم تشكيلها بإضافة (اسم + اسم):

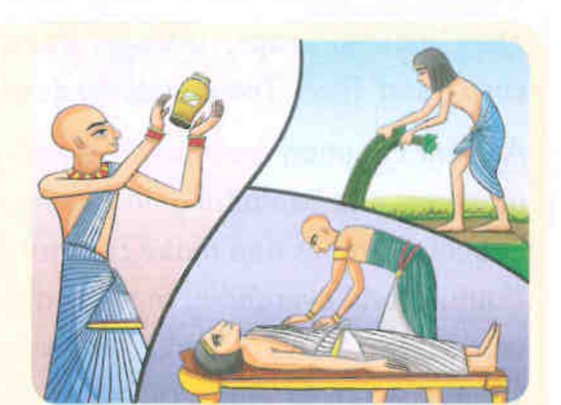
e.g. crafts + man = craftsman

e.g. fisherman ⟶ fishermen   woman ⟶ women



I can find it out!

There were many other jobs in Ancient Egypt like priests, noblemen, soldiers, hunters, and artists. Most people did the job of their fathers.



كان هنـاك العديـد مـن الوظائـف الأخـرى فـى مصـر القديمـة، مثـل: الكهنـة والنبـلاء والجنـود والصيادين والفنانيـن. كان معظـم النـاس يقومـون بعمـل آبائهـم.

Check point

Unscramble and write: أعد الترتيب واكتب:

1 
rtdare ....

2 
dctoro ....

3 
csebir ....

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Jobs in Ancient Egypt



Temple of Hatshepsut, female ruler of Egypt, c. 1473-1458 BCE

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt's economy(1). They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains(2) like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen(3) were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. The craftspeople were skillful(4) and everybody in the community respected them. Fewer people worked as scribes(5). Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs(6), and this was very expensive.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

(1) اقتصاد
(2) حبوب
(3) حرفيون
(4) ماهر
(5) كتاب
(6) اللغة الهيروغليفية

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	Farmers could plant fruits, vegetables, and grains. (SB)	( )	( )
2	Women worked at home only. (SB)	( )	( )
3	Hatshepsut was an Ancient Egyptian queen.	( )	( )

Parents' tips
Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقه صحيحة.

الترجمـة

• لقد عمل الناس فى مصر القديمة بجد. كان كل شخص لديه وظيفة. تمكنوا أن يعملوا كصيادين وخبازين وأطباء وتجار. لكن معظم الناس عملوا كمزارعين. كان المزارعون مهمين للغاية بالنسبة لاقتصاد مصر القديمة. لقد عملوا فى الحقول التى كانت قريبة من منازلهم. زرعوا محاصيل خاصة الحبوب مثل القمح والذرة والكتان. زرعوا الخضراوات والفواكه أيضًا.

• كان الحرفيون المصريون القدماء جيدين جدًا أيضًا. لقد صنعوا لوحات جميلة ومجوهرات ومنحوتات ذهبية جميلة. اعتادوا على نسج الملابس الجميلة وصنع أوانى الطهى الملونة. كان الحرفيون ماهرين وكان الجميع يحترمهم فى المجتمع. قلة من الناس عملوا ككتبة. عرف الكتبة القراءة والكتابة بشكل جيد. الكتابة المصرية لم تكن سهلة التعلم. أمضى الكتبة سنوات عديدة فى تعلم الهيروغليفية، وكان هذا مكلفًا للغاية.

• عملت المرأة المصرية القديمة فى المنزل وكان بإمكانها العمل فى الخارج أيضًا. قامت النساء بطهى وجبات الطعام وتنظيف المنزل والاعتناء بأطفالهن. تمكنت النساء من نسج السلال، وخبْز الخبز، وصنع الصنادل، وتمكن من بيعها فى السوق. أيضًا يمكنهم حتى أن يصبحوا فراعنة. كانت حتشبسوت إحدى الملكات المشهورات فى مصر القديمة.

• عرف الجميع فى مصر القديمة أن العمل مهم للحياة، لذلك كان قدماء المصريين ناجحين للغاية!



PRACTICE — Lesson 1



13

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب: (4)



1  ....

2  ....

3  ....

4  ....

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: (4)

A	B
1 A: Who is a scribe?	( ) was Hatshepsut.
2 If you were good at making things, ...	( ) which consisted of about 500 signs.
3 One famous queen in Ancient Egypt ...	( ) B: The person who could write everything down.
4 Hieroglyphs is a system of writing ...	( ) you could be a good craftsman.

3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: (5)





care – pharaohs – meals – sandals – baskets

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked ...., cleaned the house, and took .... of their children. Women could weave ...., bake bread, and make .... They could even become ....

Parents' tips
(1) Help your child write the word.
(2) Help your child read and match.
(3) Help your child fill in gaps.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب الكلمة.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يملأ الفراغات.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 1





11

Listening

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

fishermen – Ancient – economy – important

Hana : What jobs did people in .... Egypt have?

Ola : They could work as ...., bakers, doctors, and traders.

Hana : What was the most .... job?

Ola : Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt's ....



Reading

2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4



1. Hatshepsut was a famous (farmer – doctor – queen) in Ancient Egypt.
2. Farmers planted (vegetables – grains – fruits) like wheat and corn.
3. (Craftsmen – Bakers – Scribes) used to weave beautiful clothes.
4. Women in Ancient Egypt could weave (sandals – baskets – bread).



Writing



3 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 3

1. The ancient egyptians were very successful

....

2. who was hatshepsut

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

STUDY



Lesson 2

Science





Ecosystems

A What is an ecosystem?



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary



a marine ecosystem
نظام بيئي بحري



a freshwater ecosystem
نظام بيئي للمياه العذبة



a desert ecosystem
نظام بيئي صحراوي

a rockpool ecosystem
نظام بيئي لبركة الصخور

Living things كائنات حية



crab
سرطان البحر



fish
سمكة



insect
حشرة



seaweed
أعشاب بحرية

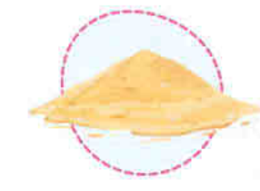


tree
شجرة

Non-living things أشياء غير حية



rocks
صخور



sand
رمال



sunlight
ضوء الشمس



water
مياه



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (gh) لا ينطقان «silent» كما في كلمة (sunlight).

Extra vocabulary

natural (adj.)	طبيعي	connected (adj.)	متصل
Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون الأستوائية	suitable (adj.)	مناسب
conditions	ظروف	shelter	مأوى
right (adj.)	مناسب	temperature	درجة الحرارة
climate	طقس	comfortable (adj.)	مريح
environment	بيئة		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعــال منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	survive	ينجو (يبقى على قيد الحياة)	survived
carry	يحمل	carried	allow	يسمح	allowed
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**		
Present		Past	Present		Past
grow	ينمو	grew	give	يعطى	gave

Expressions and Phrases

(be) called	يُدعى / يُسمى	work together	يعمل معًا



Definitions

living	something that is alive شيء حي
non-living	something that isn't alive شيء غير حي
ecosystem	all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place كل الحيوانات والنباتات والصخور... إلخ في مكان ما
rockpool	a small area of water with rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc. مساحة صغيرة من الماء بها صخور وسرطان البحر والأعشاب البحرية ... إلخ

Vocabulary Check

الأسماء المركبة هي التي يتم تشكيلها بإضافة (اسم + اسم):

- e.g. rock + pool = rockpool
- rain + forest = rainforest
- e.g. sun + light = sunlight
- sea + weed = seaweed



Think
We need food, water, and shelter to survive. نحن نحتاج إلى الطعام والمياه والمأوى لنبقى على قيد الحياة.

Check point

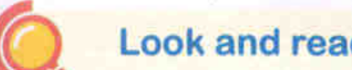
Look and write: انظر واكتب: SB

1  ....

2 ....

3  ....

Parents' tips
Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

What is an ecosystem?



a marine ecosystem



a freshwater ecosystem

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living[(1)] and non-living[(2)] things is called an ecosystem[(3)]. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool[(4)], or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest.

The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed.

The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.

a desert ecosystem



a rockpool ecosystem

(1) حي
(2) غير حي
(3) نظام بيئي
(4) بركة صخرية

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	Everything in the natural system is connected.	( )	( )
2	Ecosystems can be small or very big.	( )	( )
3	There is only one ecosystem on Earth.	( )	( )

Parents' tips
Help your child read the passage correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.
الترجمة
كل شيء في العالم الطبيعي متصل. تسمى هذه العلاقة بين الأشياء الحية وغير الحية بالنظام البيئي. يمكن أن تكون النظم البيئية صغيرة، مثل بركه صخرية حولها صخور، أو يمكن أن تكون كبيرة جدًا، مثل غابات الأمازون الاستوائية. الكائنات الحية في البركه الصخرية التي حولها صخور هي: الأسماك وسرطان البحر والأعشاب البحرية. الكائنات غير الحية هي: الصخور والماء والرمال وأشعة الشمس. كل هذه الأشياء تعمل معًا لإنشاء نظام بيئي. هناك الكثير من النظم البيئية المختلفة على الأرض.



B Why are ecosystems important?



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Everything in the natural world is connected. An ecosystem is a place where animals, plants, and other living things live together. Animals and plants need each other to live. They also need suitable[1] conditions.

Animals eat plants, insects, and other animals to survive. They need food, water, and shelter. And they need the weather to be at the right temperature.

Plants need sunlight and water to survive. Some plants need animals, birds, and insects to carry seeds to other areas so they can grow. They also need the right climate.

Climate is also an important part of an ecosystem. Trees give us oxygen. This makes the air cleaner and allows plants, animals, and humans to live in a comfortable environment.

(1) مناسب / ملائم



Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	All living things live together in an ecosystem.	( )	( )
2	Animals don't need plants to live.	( )	( )
3	Living things need too hot weather to live in.	( )	( )

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة

- كل شيء في العالم الطبيعي متصل. النظام البيئي هو مكان حيث تعيش الحيوانات والنباتات والكائنات الحية الأخرى معًا. الحيوانات والنباتات تحتاج بعضها البعض لتعيش. هم أيضًا بحاجة إلى الظروف المناسبة.
- تأكل الحيوانات النباتات والحشرات والحيوانات الأخرى للبقاء على قيد الحياة. إنهم بحاجة للطعام، الماء والمأوى. ويحتاجون إلى أن يكون الطقس في درجة حرارة مناسبة.
- تحتاج النباتات إلى ضوء الشمس والماء للبقاء على قيد الحياة. تحتاج بعض النباتات إلى حيوانات، طيور وحشرات لتحمل البذور إلى مناطق أخرى حتى تتمكن من النمو. إنهم بحاجة إلى المناخ المناسب.
- المناخ أيضًا جزء مهم من النظام البيئي. الأشجار تعطينا الأكسجين. هذا يجعل الهواء أنظف ويسمح للنباتات والحيوانات والبشر بالعيش في بيئة مريحة.





C Egypt's ecosystem

Listen and say: استمع، وقل:

Main vocabulary

coast	ساحل	endangered (adj.)	مهددة بالانقراض	jackal	ابن آوى
species	أنواع / فصائل	reeds	قصب	salt water	مياه مالحه

Extra vocabulary

coral	المرجان	areas	مناطق	ibex	الوعل الجبلي
tamarisk	الطرفاء (نوع من الأشجار)	acacia	السنط (نوع من الأشجار)		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present		Past
include	يتضمن/ يشمل	included

Irregular verbs

Present		Past
have	يملك/ عنده	had

Expressions and Phrases

the Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط	mangrove trees	أشجار القرم
many different species of animals	أنواع مختلفة من الحيوانات	on the river bank	على ضفة النهر



Definitions

endangered (adj.) مهدد بالانقراض	means that there are not many of a plant or animal left in the world. This is because their habitat has been lost or because too many of them have been killed. يعني أنه لم يتبق الكثير من نبات أو حيوان ما في العالم. هذا لأن موطنهم قد فقد أو لأن الكثير منهم قد قُتلوا.



I can find it out!

There are many ecosystems on Earth. The desert ecosystem is an example. There are living things like camels and plants. There are non-living things like sunlight, sand, and rocks.



هناك العديد من النظم البيئية على الأرض؛ النظام البيئي الصحراوي هو مثال. هناك كائنات حية مثل: الجمال والنباتات. هناك أشياء غير حية مثل: ضوء الشمس والرمل والصخور.

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

1 Egypt's marine ecosystem

Egypt's coast[1] includes the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea. In both of these seas, there are many different plants and animals. Some of them, like turtles, birds, and mangrove trees, are endangered[2]. There are more than 800 types of seaweed and more than 200 types of coral.



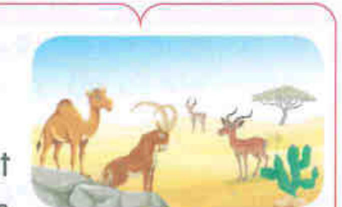
Egypt's marine ecosystem

(1) ساحل

(2) مهدد بالانقراض

2 Egypt's desert ecosystem

About 90% of Egypt's land is desert areas. It looks like nothing can live in these areas, but there are many different animals in Egypt's deserts, such as camels, gazelles, jackals[3], ibex, and foxes. There are also some plants, such as tamarisk and acacia.



Egypt's desert ecosystem

(3) ابن آوى

3 Egypt's freshwater ecosystem

The banks of the Nile River have many different species[4] of animals and plants, like hippos and bamboo. There is lots of freshwater, not saltwater like the sea. Many water birds live in the reeds[5] on the river bank. It's a good place for them because there are plenty of fish to eat.



Egypt's freshwater ecosystem

(4) أنواع / فصائل

(5) القصب

Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Egypt borders (two – three – five) seas. SB

2 Mangrove trees are (a lot – endangered – many).

3 The water in the Nile is (freshwater – saltwater – seawater). 

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passages correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرات بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة

- يشمل ساحل مصر البحر الأبيض المتوسط والبحر الأحمر. يوجد في كلا هذين البحرين العديد من النباتات والحيوانات المختلفة. بعضها، مثل السلاحف والطيور وأشجار القرم، مهددة بالانقراض . يوجد أكثر من ٨٠٠ نوع من الأعشاب البحرية وأكثر من ٢٠٠ نوع من المرجان.
- حوالى ٩٠٪ من أراضى مصر عبارة عن مناطق صحراوية. يبدو أنه لا يوجد شيء يمكن أن يعيش في هذه المناطق، ولكن هناك العديد من الحيوانات المختلفة في صحارى مصر، مثل: الجمال والغزلان وابن آوى الوعل الجبلى والثعالب. هناك أيضًا نباتات، مثل الطرفاء والسنط.
- يوجد على ضفاف نهر النيل أنواع مختلفة من الحيوانات والنباتات، مثل أفراس النهر والخيزران. هناك الكثير من المياه العذبة، وليس المياه المالحة مثل البحر. تعيش العديد من الطيور المائية في القصب على ضفة النهر. إنه مكان جيد لهم لأن هناك الكثير من الأسماك لتناولها.



PRACTICE

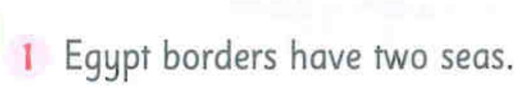


Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating





1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 4

A

1 Egypt borders have two seas.

2 Some plants can live in the desert ...

3 Turtles are endangered.

4 The banks of the Nile River ...

B

( ) like tamarisk and acacia.

( ) have many species of animals.

( ) They are the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea.

( ) There are not many of them.

2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1 Most of Egypt's land is (farming – desert – water) areas.

2 (Tamarisk – Acacia – Bamboo) grows in the desert.

3 Turtles are (extinct – endangered – enormous) species. SB

4 Ibex and foxes (live – don't live – can't live) in the desert. 

3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة:



place – fish – species – reeds – saltwater

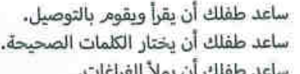
The banks of the Nile River have many different .... of animals and plants. There is lots of fresh water, not .... like the sea. Many water birds live in the .... on the river bank. It's a good .... for them because there are plenty of .... to eat.

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child read and match.

(2) Help your child choose the correct words.

(3) Help your child fill in gaps.



ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.

ساعد طفلك أن يختار الكلمات الصحيحة.

ساعد طفلك أن يملأ الفراغات.




TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 2



Listening

13

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

animals – different – ecosystem – desert

Amira : What's an ....?
Kareem : It's all the ...., plants, and rocks, etc. in a place.
Amira : Is there an ecosystem in the ....?
Kareem : Yes, there are many .... animals and plants in Egypt's desert.



Reading



2 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: 5

An ecosystem is a place where animals, plants, and other living things live together. Animals and plants need each other to live. They also need suitable conditions. Animals eat plants, insects, and other animals to survive. They need food, water, and shelter. And they need the weather to be at the right temperature. Plants need sunlight and water to survive. They also need the right climate.

A Choose the correct word:

1 (Desert – River – Ecosystem) is a place where animals and plants live together.
2 Animals and plants need (hot – cold – suitable) conditions to live in.
3 (Animals – Plants – Insects) need sunlight and water to survive.

B Answer the following questions:

4 What do animals need to survive? ....
5 What temperature animals need to survive? ....



Writing

3 Look and write: انظر واكتب: 4

1  ....
2  ....
3  ....
4  ....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

STUDY



Lesson 3

Tourism helps our community



A My trip to Nubia with a tour guide



Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

welcoming (adj.)	مرحّب	archaeologists	علماء الآثار
souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية		

Extra vocabulary

tourism	السياحة	airport	مطار	managers	مديرون
waiter	نادل (جرسون)	chef	طاهٍ	boat captain	قبطان القارب
owner	مالك	tour guide	مرشد سياحي	tourists	سياح
friendly (adj.)	لطيف/ ودود	historical (adj.)	تاريخي	monuments	آثار
trips	رحلات	wonderful (adj.)	رائع	history	تاريخ
builder	عامل بناء	architect	مهندس معماري	enormous (adj.)	ضخم
traditional (adj.)	تقليدي	sunset	غروب الشمس		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs			أفعـــال منتظمة	
Present		Past	Present	Past
visit	يزور	visited	need يحتاج	needed
move	يحرك	moved	watch يشاهد	watched
Irregular verbs			**أفعال غير منتظمة**	
Present		Past	Present	Past
know	يعرف	knew	see يرى	saw
think	يفكر	thought	buy يشترى	bought

Expressions and Phrases

one of the world's best places	أحد أفضل الأماكن في العالم	told us stories	حكى لنا قصصًا
all about	كل شيء عن		



Think

It is important for people with jobs in tourism to be friendly to make tourists feel happy and come to visit the country again. This makes tourists love the country.

من المهم للأشخاص الذين لديهم وظائف في السياحة أن يكونوا ودودين لجعل السياح يشعرون بالسعادة والقدوم لزيارة البلد مرة أخرى. هذا يجعل السياح يحبون البلد.

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the new words and say them correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.

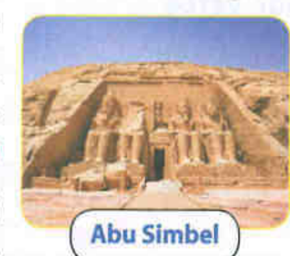
Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

My trip to Nubia with a tour guide

Today more than three million people in Egypt work in tourism. There are hotel managers, waiters, chefs, boat captains, hotel workers, farmers, drivers, and shop owners. All of these people help to make Egypt one of the world's best places to visit for a holiday. And of course, one of the most important jobs is a tour guide.

Tour guides show tourists the country they are visiting. They need to know about the places that the tourists want to visit, but they also need to be friendly and welcoming[1] so that the tourists have a good holiday. One place you will find amazing Egyptian tour guides is in Nubia. Nubia has many historical monuments and interesting places to see, like the Great Temple of Ramses II, Elephantine Island and the island of Philae. One of my favorite trips last year was to the small village of Abu Simbel. The hotel chef had prepared a delicious breakfast of bread, yogurt, and fresh fruit for us to eat before we left with Ali, our tour guide. Rami, the taxi driver, told us stories of old Nubia and its history all the way to Abu Simbel.

The Great Temple is wonderful and Ali told us all about its history. He knew such a lot and we learned so much from him. It's amazing to think that builders, architects, and archaeologists[2] were able to move[3] the enormous temples! We also bought souvenirs[4] from the market traders near the temples. Rami took us to a local restaurant where the chef made us a delicious traditional dinner and we watched the beautiful sunset over Abu Simbel. It was the best day of our holiday!


Abu Simbel

(1) مُرَحِّب
(2) علماء الآثار
(3) يُحرك
(4) هدايا تذكارية

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	More than three million people in Egypt work in tourism.	( )	( )
2	Managers show tourists the country they are visiting.	( )	( )
3	The island of Philae is in Nubia.	( )	( )

Parents' tips
Help your child read the passage correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة

- اليوم أكثر من ثلاثة ملايين شخص في مصر يعملون في مجال السياحة. هناك مديرو الفنادق، والنوادل، والطهاة، وقباطنة القوارب، وعمال الفنادق، والمزارعون، والسائقون، وأصحاب المتاجر. كل هؤلاء الأشخاص يساعدون في جعل مصر واحدة من أفضل الأماكن في العالم للزيارة لقضاء عطلة. وبالطبع، المرشد السياحي هو أحد أهم الوظائف.
- يعرض المرشدون السياحيون للسائحين البلد الذي يزورونه. هم بحاجة إلى معرفة الأماكن التي يرغب السائحون في زيارتها، لكنهم أيضًا بحاجة إلى أن يكونوا ودودين ومُرَحِّبين حتى يحظى السائحون بعطلة جيدة.
- مكان واحد ستجد مرشدين سياحيين مصريين رائعين في النوبة. يوجد في النوبة العديد من الآثار التاريخية والأماكن المثيرة للاهتمام مثل المعبد الكبير لرمسيس الثاني وجزيرة الفنتين وجزيرة فيلة. كانت إحدى رحلاتي المفضلة العام الماضي إلى قرية أبو سمبل الصغيرة. أعد طاهي الفندق وجبة فطور لذيذة من الخبز والزبادي والفواكه الطازجة قبل أن نغادر مع علي، مرشدنا السياحي. أخبرنا رامي، سائق التاكسي، بقصص النوبة القديمة وتاريخها وصولًا إلى أبو سمبل.
- المعبد الكبير رائع وقد أخبرنا علي كل شيء عن تاريخه. كان يعرف الكثير وتعلمنا منه الكثير. إنه لأمر مدهش أن تفكر أن البناة، المهندسين المعماريين وعلماء الآثار كانوا قادرين على تحريك المعابد الهائلة! اشترينا أيضًا هدايا تذكارية من تجار السوق بالقرب من المعابد. أخذنا رامي إلى مطعم محلي حيث أعد لنا الطاهي عشاء تقليديًا لذيذًا وشاهدنا غروب الشمس الجميل فوق أبو سمبل. كان أفضل يوم في إجازتنا.



B Language Focus



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple to talk about habits, routines, and things we do every day.
نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين والأشياء التي نقوم بها كل يوم.

Form

Subject (الفاعل) (I, We, You, They, (اسم جمع)) + first form of the verb (inf.) التصريف الأول للفعل

e.g.



I drive to work at 10 am.
أنا أقود السيارة ذاهبًا إلى العمل في العاشرة صباحًا.

Subject (الفاعل) (He, She, It, (اسم مفرد)) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) + (s / es / ies)

e.g.



He cuts the vegetables with a sharp knife.
هو يقطع الخضراوات بسكين حاد.

Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

must / mustn't يجب / لا يجب

We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do. We use "mustn't" (must not) when we are not allowed to do something.

نستخدم «يجب» عندما نتحدث عن شيء يجب علينا القيام به. نستخدم «لا يجب» عندما لا يُسمح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

Subject (الفاعل) + must/mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g.

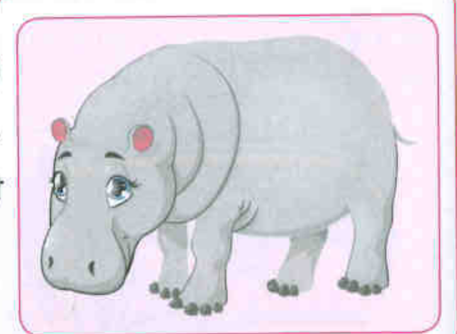


I must buy some bananas. يجب أن أشترى بعض الموز.

We mustn't eat in the classroom. لا يجب أن نأكل فى الفصل.



Walid looks after hippos. He must make sure they are happy and healthy. He must prepare their food. He must give them fresh water to drink. He must give them a bath. He must even clean their teeth!



Extra vocabulary

boss	رئيس	sharp (adj.)	حاد	midday	منتصف النهار
customer	عميل / زبون	melon	شمّام	look after	يعتنى بـ
hippos	أفراس النهر	give them a bath	يُحمّمهم / يجعلهم يستحمون		

Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My sister (cook – cooking – cooks) dinner every day.
2. I (must – mustn't – did) do my English homework. SB
3. We mustn't (walks – walk – walking) on the grass. SB



Parents' tips

Help your child use the present simple tense correctly to talk about habits and routines and use "must" and "mustn't" to talk about things they have to do and things they are not allowed to do correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط بطريقة صحيحة ليتحدث عن العادات والروتين ويستخدم «must» و «mustn't» للتحدث بشكل صحيح عن الأشياء التى عليهم القيام بها والأشياء التى لا يسمح لهم بفعلها.

الترجمـة

وليد يعتنى بأفراس النهر. يجب أن يتأكد من أنهم سعداء وبصحة جيدة. يجب أن يعد طعامهم. يجب أن يمنحهم ماءً عذبًا للشرب. يجب أن يحممهم. يجب عليه حتى تنظيف أسنانهم!

PRACTICE



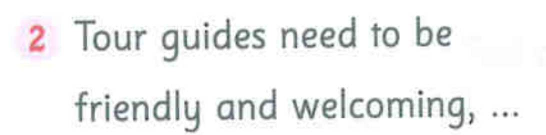
Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 4





A

1. We went to a local restaurant ...
2. Tour guides need to be friendly and welcoming, ...
3. Nubia has many historical monuments ...
4. More than three million people in Egypt ...

B

( ) so that the tourists have a good holiday.
( ) like the Great Temple of Ramses II.
( ) work in tourism.
( ) and the chef made us a delicious dinner.

2 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة:



amazing – friendly – guide – tourism – tourists

Many people in Egypt work in .... A tour .... shows the tourists the country. He needs to know about the places that the .... want to visit. He also needs to be .... and welcoming. Egypt is an .... place for tourists.

3 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة:



1. mustn't – grass – on – walk – You – the.
   ....
2. work – drive – I – 10 – to – at – am. SB
   ....
3. a tour – What – do – guide – does?
   ....
4. tidy – Nadim – the – must – kitchen – up. SB
   ....





Parents' tips

(1) Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
(2) Help your child fill in gaps. ساعد طفلك أن يملأ الفراغات.
(3) Help your child re-arrange to write correct sentences or questions. ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملًا أو أسئلة صحيحة.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 3



13

Listening



1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

guide – want – tourists – tour

A : What do you .... to be?
B : I want to be a tour ....
A : What does a .... guide do?
B : He shows historical places to ....

Reading

2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4



1. I (chop – chops – chopping) the vegetables with a sharp knife. SB
2. The Great Temple of Ramses II is in (Giza – Nubia – Luxor).
3. Nahla mustn't (wake – wakes – waking) her sick brother up. SB
4. I bought (restaurants – souvenirs – monuments) from the market traders.



Writing



3 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5

"Tourism in Egypt"

work – hotel workers – tour guides – friendly

....
....
....
....





Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



STUDY Lesson 4





A Story





Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

grasshopper	جراد	relaxing (adj.)	مستريح
fence	سور	boring (adj.)	ممل

Extra vocabulary

fields	حقول	strange (adj.)	غريب	the future	المستقبل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
buzz	يطن	buzzed	rest	يستريح	rested
ask	يسأل	asked	reply	يرد	replied
stop	يتوقف	stopped	hop	يقفز	hopped
harvest	يحصد	harvested	knock	يطرق	knocked
shine	يلمع	shined			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
fly	يطير	flew	spend	يقضي	spent
hear	يسمع	heard	think	يفكر	thought
understand	يفهم	understood	find	يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

full of flowers	ملىء بالزهور	the bees are buzzing	النحل يطن
resting against a tree	يستريح على شجرة	have some fun	يحصل على بعض المرح
carry on with my work	أكمل عملى	come in	يدخل

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the new words and let him/her say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



The Ant and the Grasshopper

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

1 It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing[1] and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard.



(1) يطن

2 The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing[2]. He doesn't like to work. Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange sound. He wants to find out what it is. He looks over the garden fence[3].



(2) مستريح

(3) سـور

The middle

3 'What are you doing, Ant?' asks the grasshopper. 'I'm working,' replies the ant. 'But it's a beautiful day,' says the grasshopper. 'Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun?' 'Thank you, but I need to carry on[4] with my work,' says the ant.



(4) يكمل / يستمر في

التـرجمـة

- إنه الربيع. تشرق الشمس والحقول والحدائق مليئة بالزهور تأكلها الحيوانات والحشرات. إنه يوم جميل. النحل يطنّ والفراشات تطير فى الشمس. ومع ذلك، فإن النمل يعمل بجد.
- يقضى الجراد الكسول معظم وقته فى الاسترخاء. لا يحب العمل. اليوم، كان يستريح على شجرة عندما سمع صوتًا غريبًا. يريد أن يعرف ما هو. إنه ينظر من فوق سور الحديقة.
- يسأل الجراد «ماذا تفعل؟». يجيب النمل: «نحن نعمل». يقول الجراد: «إنه يوم جميل. لماذا لا تتوقف عن العمل ويمكننا الحصول على بعض المرح؟ يقول النمل: «شكرًا لك، لكننا بحاجة إلى مواصلة العمل».

4 'But working is so boring[5],' replies the grasshopper. 'Maybe,' says the ant, 'but it's something we all have to do. We must think about the future, not just today.' The grasshopper didn't understand and so he just hops away[6].



(5) مُمل

(6) يقفز بعيدًا

5 Soon it is fall. The ant has worked hard and all his crops have grown well. The ant doesn't stop working until he has harvested[7] all the food and taken it inside for the winter.



(7) حصد

The end

6 Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. Suddenly, he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on[8] the ant's door. 'I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry.' 'Come in,' says the ant. 'Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too.'



(8) طرق على

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	The ant always rests.	( )	( )
2	The grasshopper thinks work is boring.	( )	( )
3	It's very important to work hard.	( )	( )

Parents' tips

Help your child read the story correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقوم بقراءة القصة بطريقة صحيحة.

التـرجمـة

- أجاب الجراد: «لكن العمل ممل جدًا». قال النمل: «ربما، لكن هذا شيء علينا جميعًا القيام به. يجب أن نفكر فى المستقبل، ليس اليوم فقط». لم يفهم الجراد ولذا فقد قفز بعيدًا.
- سرعان ما حل الخريف. كان على النمل أن يعمل بجد، ونمت جميع محاصيله بشكل جيد. لم يتوقف النمل عن العمل حتى حصد كل الطعام وأخذها إلى الداخل لفصل الشتاء.
- سريعًا، يحل الشتاء ويكون باردًا جدًا. الجراد جائع، ليس لديه أى طعام ولا يستطيع العثور على أى طعام. فجأة، يتذكر المحادثة التى أجراها مع النمل. طرق باب النمل: «أنا أفهمك الآن، أنت. لقد عملت والآن لديك طعام. لم أعمل والآن أنا جائع. «تعال»، يقول النمل: «نعم، من الجيد الاستمتاع، ولكن من المهم أيضًا أن تعمل بجد أيضًا».



B Pronunciation

Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Diphthong is a sound formed by the combination of two vowels in a single syllable.

عبارة عن صوت يتكون من مزيج من حرفين متحركين في مقطع لفظي واحد.

/aʊ/



/aɪ/



/ɔɪ/

boy	ولد
enjoy	يستمتع
noise	ضوضاء
point	يشير
toy	لعبة

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to the words and let him/her say them correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة.

Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

The suffix "-ist" means 'someone who does something'. We often use it in words for jobs.

اللاحقة ist- تعنى «الشخص الذى يقوم بفعل الشئ.» غالبًا ما نستخدمها فى الكلمات التى تدل على الوظائف.

e.g. dent + ist = dentist



biologist
عالمة أحياء



journalist
صحفية



receptionist
موظف استقبال



pianist
عازفة بيانو



scientist
عالِم

Check point

Listen and circle: استمع وضع دائرة:

1 buy – eye 2 pianist – scientist 3 town – down

Parents' tips
Help your child identify the correct use of the suffix "-ist".
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الاستخدام الصحيح للمقطع «ist-».



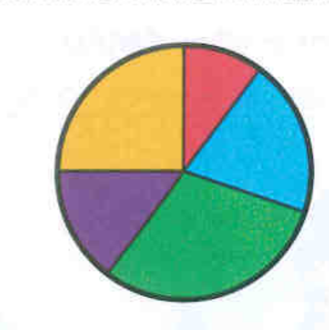
Math

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

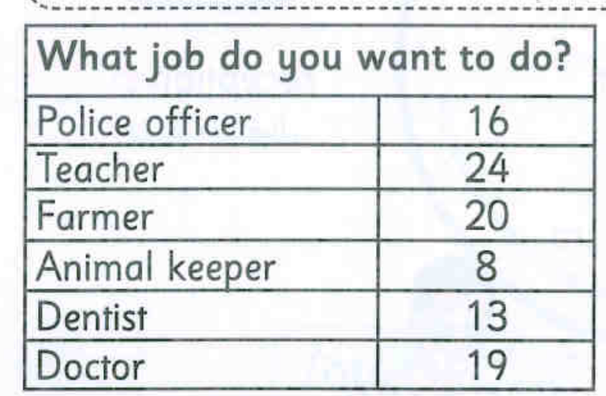
A pie chart is a way of showing information. المخطط الدائرى هو طريقة لإظهار المعلومات.



This is a pie.
هذه فطيرة.



This is a pie chart.
هذا مخطط دائرى (يأخذ شكل الفطيرة).



What job do you want to do?	
Police officer	16
Teacher	24
Farmer	20
Animal keeper	8
Dentist	13
Doctor	19



Check point

Complete the table and make your own pie chart:
أكمل الجدول وقم بعمل المخطط دائرى الخاص بك:

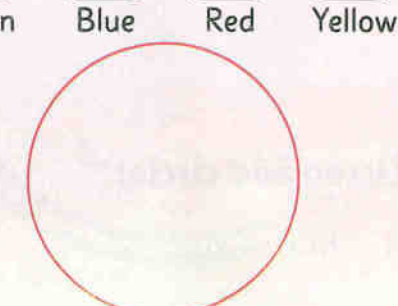
How many different colors of gifts are there?	
Green	....
Blue	....
Red	....
Yellow	....


Green

Blue

Red

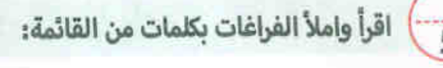
Yellow



Parents' tips
Help your child recognize the pie chart correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على المخطط الدائرى بطريقة صحيحة.







1 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 5

grasshopper – cold – ant – hungry – food

It was winter and it was very .... The grasshopper was .... He didn't have any .... and he couldn't find any. The .... worked and now he has food. The .... didn't work and now he is hungry.

2 Read and circle the odd word out: اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة: 4

1 flower – buy – find – eat
2 eye – mouth – hand – toy
3 boring – strange – spring – relaxing
4 scientist – receptionist – biologist – noise



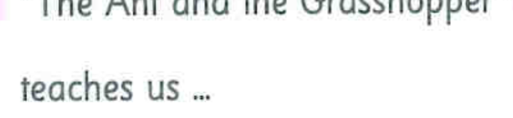

3 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 4

A

1 "The Ant and the Grasshopper" teaches us ...
2 She is a biologist.
3 The sound of the word «town»...
4 The grasshopper was relaxing and ...

B

( ) the ant was working hard to prepare for winter. SB
( ) is the same in "down".
( ) that it's important to work to prepare for the future. SB
( ) She works in the field of biology.

Parents' tips
(1) Help your child fill in the gaps.
(2) Help your child read and circle the odd words.
(3) Help your child read and match.
ساعد طفلك أن يملأ الفراغات.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع دائرة حول الكلمات المختلفة.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 4



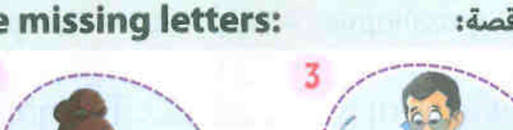


Listening



10

1 Listen and supply the missing letters: استمع وأكمل الحروف الناقصة: 4







1 piani__ 2 biolog__t 3 scient_s_ 4 journal__t



Reading

2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4





1. The ant (likes – doesn't like – doesn't need) working hard.
2. A (scientist – pianist – receptionist) plays music.
3. It is very cold in (winter – summer – spring).
4. The grasshopper is (active – working – lazy).



Writing

3 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 2



1. what are you doing, ant

....

2. the grasshopper doesn t have any food

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

STUDY



Lesson 5 Writing



What are Rana and Sherif's jobs?



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured (1), I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring their animals to me. If an animal needs an operation (2), the room has to be very, very clean.
On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check (3) on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind! I lived on a farm when I was younger, so I'm used to it, and I love the countryside (4). What's the worst part of the job? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!

(1) مُصاب
(2) عملية جراحية
(3) يفحص
(4) الريف

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare (5) me! I'm not keen on (6) being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out (7) the best solutions (8).

(5) يخيف / يفزع
(6) حريص على
(7) نتوصل إلى / نعمل على
(8) حلول

Parents' tips
Help your child read the passages correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرات بطريقة صحيحة.
الترجمة
• أنا اسمي رنا. أنا أعمل مع الحيوانات وأحب عملي. اذا كانت الحيوانات مريضة أو مصابة، فأنا أساعد في تحسينها. في بعض الأيام أعمل في الداخل ويحضر الناس حيواناتهم إليّ. إذا احتاج حيوان إلى عملية جراحية، يجب أن تكون الحجرة نظيفة جدًا جدًا. في أيام أخرى، أذهب إلى منازل الناس أو مزارعهم للاطمئنان على الحيوانات. يمكن أن تكون بعض الأماكن شديدة الاتساخ، لكني لا أمانع! كنت أعيش في مزرعة عندما كنت أصغر سنًا،لذلك أنا معتاد على ذلك، وأحب الريف. ما هو أسوأ جزء في الوظيفة؟ إنه عندما يمرض حيوان في الليل ويكون عليّ أن أنهض من السرير!
• مرحبًا أنا شريف. عندما كنت صغيرًا، علمت أنني لا أريد العمل مع الحيوانات. انهم يخيفونني! لا أحب أن أكون بالخارج، لذلك أردت الحصول على وظيفة مكتبية. عندما كنت صغيرًا، كنت أحب لعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر. أنا أيضًا حقًا أستمتع بحل المشاكل. لذلك، في عملي أقوم بالأمرين! أنا أيضا أستمتع بالعمل مع أشخاص آخرين. هناك ١٦ شخصًا في فريقي. نحن لا نتفق دائمًا، لكننا نتوصل إلى أفضل الحلول.



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Steps to write about a job: خطوات الكتابة عن وظيفة:

- Introduce yourself. قدّم نفسك.
- Think about what you like and what you don't like. فكر فيما تحبه وما لا تحبه.

e.g. being indoors or outdoors/ traveling long distances/ getting up very early/ writing reports/ meeting/talking to new people

- Think about what you are good at and what you are not so good at. فكر فيما أنت جيد فيه وما لست جيدًا فيه.

e.g. solving problems/ helping sick people/animals/ making new friends/ reading lots of information/ working in a team

- Write some good points about the job. اكتب بعضًا من مزايا الوظيفة.
- Write some hard things about the job. اكتب بعض الأشياء الصعبة عن الوظيفة.
- Draw or get a photo of the job. ارسم أو احصل على صورة للوظيفة.

e.g.

Write about the job you want to do: اكتب عن الوظيفة التي تريد أن تقوم بها:

....

....

....

....

Stick here



Parents' tips
Help your child read and notice the steps of writing about a job and let him/her write about the job he/she wants to do.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويلاحظ خطوات الكتابة عن الوظيفة ودعه يكتب عن الوظيفة التي يريد أن يقوم بها.





STUDY

Lesson 6 Project

Teamwork

How to make a poster about teamwork: كيفية عمل ملصق عن العمل الجماعي:

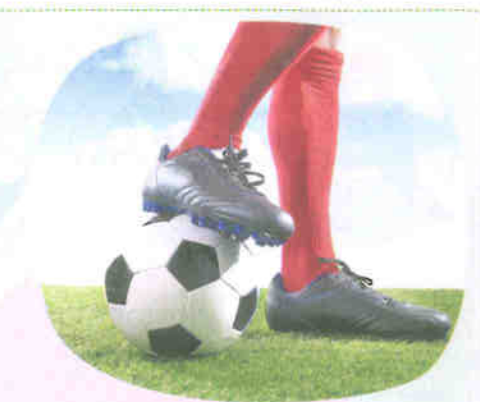


Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Teamwork



I work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment(1).



I work in a team when I'm playing football.



I work in a team when I help Mom in the kitchen at home.



I work in a team for the school concert (2).

When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something together. For example, the aim (3) of a football team is to win. You work with teammates (4) to do this. You can't win a football match by yourself (5)!

(1)	تجربة علمية	(4)	زملاء
(2)	حفلة موسيقية	(5)	بمفردك
(3)	هدف		

Parents' tips
Help your child read and let him/her notice the poster of teamwork.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ودعه يلاحظ الملصق عن العمل الجماعي.
عندما تعمل في فريق، فأنت تعمل مع أشخاص آخرين للقيام بشيء ما معًا. على سبيل المثال، هدف فريق كرة القدم هو الفوز. أنت تعمل مع زملائك في الفريق للقيام بذلك. لا يمكنك الفوز بمباراة كرة قدم لوحدك!

REVIEW





Vocabulary







craftsman doctor scribe





hieroglyphs trader

Pronunciation

/aʊ/

down
town
brown
loud
mouse





- ist suffix













biologist journalist receptionist pianist scientist

Language Focus

Present Simple Tense

I, We, You, They + inf.

e.g



- I drive to work at 10 am.

He, She, It + inf. (s/es /ies)

e.g

- He cuts the vegetables with a sharp knife.

must/mustn't

Subject (الفاعل) + must / mustn't + inf. الفعل في المصدر

e.g



- I must buy some bananas.

e.g



- We mustn't eat in the classroom.

Math

A pie chart is a way of showing information.

What job do you want to do?	
Police officer	16
Teacher	24
Farmer	20
Animal keeper	8
Dentist	13
Doctor	19



Check Your Vocabulary



Lesson 1

طبيب	حرفي ....
اللغة الهيروغليفية	كاتب ....
حبوب	تاجر ....

Lesson 2

سرطان البحر	صخور ....
مياه	رمل ....
ضوء الشمس	سمكة ....
شجرة	أعشاب بحرية ....
النظام البيئي	حشرة ....

Lesson 3

مُرحِب	علماء الآثار ....
هدايا تذكارية	مديرون ....
مطار	طاهٍ ....
سياح	آثار ....
ودود	رحلات ....

Lesson 4

لعبة	بلدة ....
يشتري	فأر ....
ضوء	ضوضاء ....
ولد	عالمة أحياء ....
صحفي	موظف استقبال ....
عازفة بيانو	عالِم ....

WRITING TIME

Check your writing

	Start the sentence with a capital letter.
	Capitalize proper nouns (Ancient Egyptians).

 **Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words:**

"Jobs in Ancient Egypt"

worked hard – farmers – economy – grains



People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt's economy. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

"Egypt's desert ecosystem"

desert areas – hot – animals – plants



About 90% of Egypt's land is desert areas. It's dry and very hot. It looks like nothing can live in these areas. But there are many different animals in Egypt's deserts, such as camels, gazelles, jackals, ibex, and foxes. There are also some plants, such as tamarisk and acacia. Life in the desert is hard.

"A trip to Nubia"

work – chefs – tour guide – tourists



One of the most important jobs in Egypt is being a tour guide. Tour guides show tourists the country they are visiting. They need to know about the places that the tourists want to visit. They also need to be friendly and welcoming.

"A job you want to do"

vet – animals – barns – better



I want to be a vet when I grow up. I would like to work with animals. Some days I will work inside. On other days, I will go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals.





Listening

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 2

Yes – Why – important – tourists

Hany : Are tour guides ....?
Youssef: ...., of course.
Hany : .... ?
Youssef: Tour guides show .... the country they are visiting.



Reading

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 5 

A	B
1 Craftsmen were skillful ...	( ) B: He is a hotel manager.
2 When you work in a team, ...	( ) It has Elephantine Island.
3 I love animals and the countryside.	( ) you work with other people to do something together.
4 Nubia has many historical monuments.	( ) and everybody respected them.
5 A: What is your father's job?	( ) I want to be a vet.

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 5 

1. (Traders – Scribes – Fishermen) in Ancient Egypt knew how to read and write well.
2. A (tour guide – chef – waiter) shows tourists different places in the country.
3. Something that isn't alive is (animal – living – non-living).
4. My sister (study – studies – studying) at Mansoura University.
5. You (must – mustn't – does) forget your umbrella. It is raining.

4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: 5 

I'm Malek. When I grow up, I don't want to work with animals because they scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I want an office job. I love playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So, when I grow up, I want to be an engineer. So, in my job, I will do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There will be a lot of people in my team. We won't always agree, but we will work out the best solutions.

A Tick (True) or (False):

	True	False
1 Malek wants to be a vet when he grows up.	( )	( )
2 Malek doesn't want to work outside.	( )	( )
3 Malek loves playing computer games.	( )	( )

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why doesn't Malek want to work with animals?

....

5 What does Malek enjoy?

....

Writing

5 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة (5)

1 become – Women – even – could – pharaohs.

....

2 need – we – What – do – survive – to?

....

3 can – rockpool – Ecosystem – a – be – like – small.

....

4 Animals – insects – eat – and – plants.

....

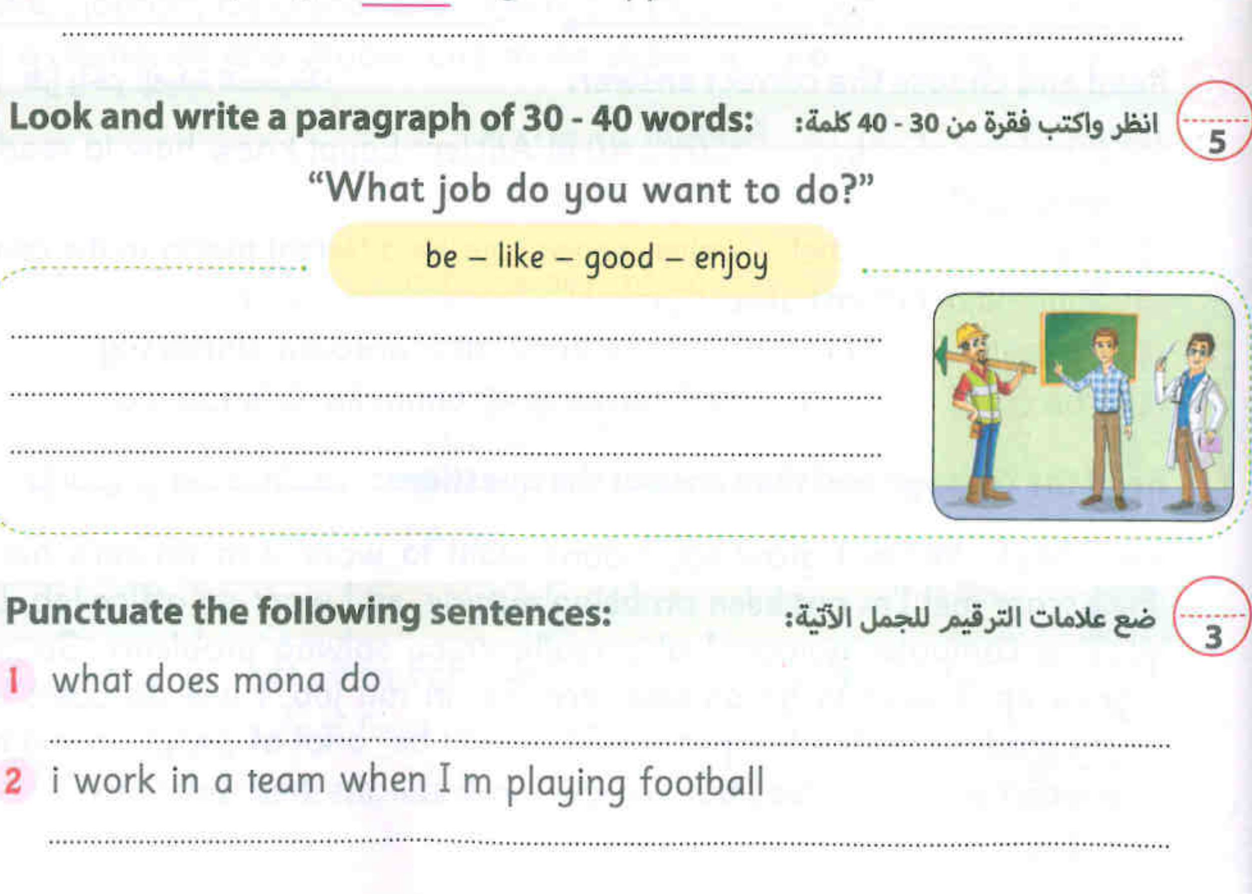
5 did – the spring – What – grasshopper – in – the – do?

....

6 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة (5)

"What job do you want to do?"

be – like – good – enjoy



....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية (3)

1 what does mona do

....

2 i work in a team when I m playing football

....



UNIT 5 AL ADWAA TEST 2



30



Listening



1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل (2)

vet – do – I – animals

Adel : What job do you want to .... when you grow up?
Ahmed : I want to be a ....
Adel : Do you like ....?
Ahmed : Yes, ... do.



Reading

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل (5)





A	B
1 Everything in the natural world ...	( ) We must be quiet.
2 A: What's a rockpool?	( ) There are not many of them.
3 The river bank is a good place for water birds ...	( ) because there are plenty of fish to eat.
4 We mustn't talk in the library.	( ) B: It's a small area of water with rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.
5 Turtles are endangered.	( ) is connected.

3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة (5)



team – scared – animals – problems – office

When I was young, I didn't want to work with .... They .... me! I wasn't keen on being outside, so I wanted an .... job. I also really enjoyed solving .... Now, I work as an engineer. So, in my job, I do both! There are 16 people in my ....

4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة (5)





Amir wants to be a geologist. He is reading about ecosystems in Egypt. About 90% of Egypt's land is desert areas. It's dry and very hot. It looks like nothing can live in these areas. But there are many different animals in Egypt's deserts, such as camels, gazelles, jackals, ibex, and foxes. There are also some plants, such as tamarisk and acacia. Life in the desert is hard.



A Choose the correct word:

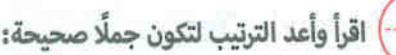
1. About 90% of Egypt is (water – rainforest – desert).
2. Some animals live in the desert like (ibex – crocodile – crab).
3. There (are – isn't – aren't) some plants in the Egyptian desert.

Answer the following questions:

4. What job does Amir want to do?
....
5. What plants grow in the desert in Egypt?
....



Writing

5 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences:  اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة:  5

1. must – some – buy – mangoes – I.
....
2. important – It's – hard – very – work – to.
....
3. the – do – What – grasshopper – did?
....
4. can – Ecosystem – be – like – big – the Amazon – rainforest.
....
5. the – flying – in – sun – Butterflies – are.
....

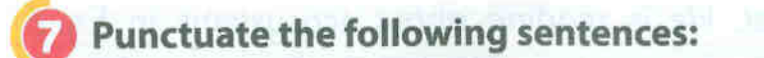
6 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة:  5

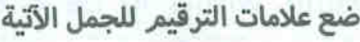
"Ecosystems"

natural – living – sunlight – different

....
....
....
....





7 Punctuate the following sentences:  ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 3

1. farida went to nubia last year
....
2. what is Walid s job
....

Unit 6 What's the weather like?

ما هي حالة الطقس؟



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to: — بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - listen, read, research, and write about the weather. — يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث ويكتب عن الطقس.
  - read and listen to a short story about a heat wave. — يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة عن الموجة الحارة.
  - use adverbs of frequency with the present simple. — يستخدم ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط.
  - understand a text about natural resources. — يفهم نصًا عن المصادر الطبيعية.
  - learn to distinguish the /p/ and /b/ sounds and silent letters in words. — يتعلم أن يميز بين صوتي الـ/p/ والـ/b/ والأصوات الصامتة في الكلمات.
  - use measurements of length and weight. — يستخدم قياسات الطول والوزن.
  - write an account of extreme weather. — يكتب بيانًا / تقريرًا عن الطقس القاسي.
  - research and make a leaflet about what to do in extreme weather. — يبحث ويكتب نشرة عما يفعل في الطقس القاسي.

Life skills

Accountability — المسئولية.

- behaving responsibly in emergencies. — التصرف بمسئولية في حالات الطوارئ.

Values

Mercy — الرحمة.

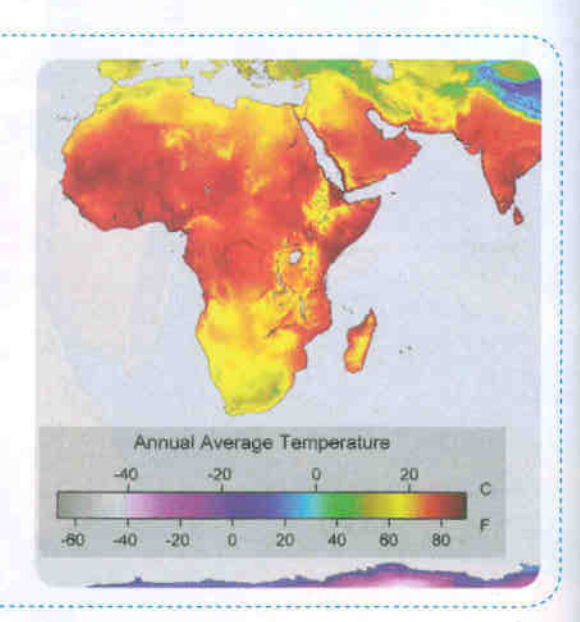
- talking about why people help others. — التحدث عن سبب مساعدة الناس للآخرين.
- appreciating difference. — تقدير الاختلاف.

Warm up

Unit six is about the weather conditions in different places across Egypt. It is also about extreme weather conditions and how to deal with* these conditions positively and safely.

Did you know?

The hottest* day ever in Egypt was 51.1°C, in Aswan. However, the highest temperature ever recorded* in Cairo was 48° on June 7, 1961.



I can find it out:

Heavy rain, strong winds, and thunderstorms occurred* in Egypt on March 2020. Airports and highways were closed. Schools and some government offices were closed, too.

الترجمة:

- تتحدث الوحدة السادسة عن الأحوال الجوية فى أماكن مختلفة فى مصر. كما تتحدث أيضًا عن الظروف الجوية القاسية وكيفية التعامل مع هذه الظروف بشكل إيجابى وآمن.
- كان أسخن يوم فى مصر هو ٥١٫١ درجة مئوية، فى أسوان. ومع ذلك أعلى درجة حرارة سجلت فى القاهرة كانت ٤٨ درجة فى ٧ يونيو ١٩٦١.
- هطلت أمطار غزيرة ورياح قوية وعواصف رعدية فى مصر فى مارس ٢٠٢٠ وأغلقت المطارات والطرق السريعة. وأغلقت أيضًا المدارس وبعض المكاتب الحكومية.

deal with	يتعامل مع	hottest	الأكثر حرارة	recorded	سجلت	occurred	حدث

STUDY



Lesson 1





A The weather





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary


cloud
سحابة


rain
مطر


snow
جليد


rainbow
قوس قزح


storm
عاصفة


wind
رياح


sun
شمس

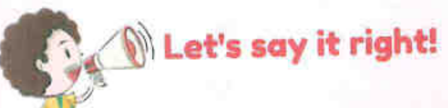

ice
ثلج


windy
عاصف


rainy
ممطر


cloudy
غائم


sunny
مشمس



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) ينطق /s/ إذا أتى بعده (e - i - y) كما فى (ice).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (th) ينطقان /ð/ كما فى (weather).

Extra vocabulary

news	أخبار	weather	طقس	normal (adj.)	طبيعي
finally	أخيرًا	nice (adj.)	لطيف	variety	تنوع
although	بالرغم من	dry (adj.)	جاف	summer	فصل الصيف
temperature	درجة الحرارة	degrees	درجات	cooler (adj.)	أكثر برودة
special (adj.)	خاص/ مميز	climate	مناخ	warm (adj.)	دافئ
little (adj.)	قليل	important (adj.)	هام	south	الجنوب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
rain	تمطر	rained	believe	يصدق	believed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
bring	يحضر	brought	go down	تنخفض	went down
mean	يعني	meant			

Expressions and Phrases

What about?	ماذا عن؟	Stay at home!	ابق في المنزل!
keep cool	يحافظ على برودته	look at	ينظر إلى
per year	خلال عام	by the sea	بجانب البحر
eight times more	أكثر بثماني مرات	that's why	ولذلك

Vocabulary Check

تتكون بعض الصفات بإضافة حرف الـ (y) للأسماء

e.g. rain مطر ⟶ rainy ممطر   cloud سحابة ⟶ cloudy غائم

weather: الطقس

It describes the air conditions over a short period of time.

يصف حالة الجو خلال فترة زمنية قصيرة.

climate: المناخ

It describes the air conditions over a longer period of time.

يصف حالة الجو خلال فترة زمنية أطول.

Check point

Unscramble and write: أعد الترتيب واكتب:

1  doclu ....

2  tosrm ....

3 unsny ....

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف إلى الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Good morning, everyone! I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo.

صباح الخير جميعًا! أحمل لكم أخبار الطقس فى مصر اليوم. سيكون الجو ممطرًا فى القاهرة.





Rainy in Cairo? How often does it rain in Cairo? It's always sunny there!

ممطر فى القاهرة؟ كم مرة تمطر فى القاهرة؟ الجو دائمًا مشمس هناك!





I know, but today it's rainy.

أعلم، لكن الطقس اليوم ممطر.



What about Sharm El-Sheikh?

ماذا عن شرم الشيخ؟





It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice.

الجو ليس باردًا أبدًا فى شرم الشيخ، ولكن لدينا اليوم بعض الجليد.





I don't believe it! What about Alexandria?
لا أصدق ذلك! ماذا عن الإسكندرية؟



It's going to be windy. That's normal – it is sometimes windy in Alexandria.
سيكون عاصفًا. هذا طبيعي - أحيانًا يكون الجو عاصفًا في الإسكندرية.





Well, thank you. And, finally, what about Luxor?
حسنًا، شكرًا لك. وأخيرًا ماذا عن الأقصر؟



Oh, this is very important: Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!
أوه، هذا مهم جدًا: الأقصر ستواجه عاصفة، لذا ابق في المنزل!



Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the dialog using the QR code and let him/her read what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her classmates.

ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code، ودعه يقرأ ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.



Language Functions

1 Making predictions about weather conditions: التنبؤ بحالة الطقس:

(be) + going to + (inf. مصدر الفعل) + حالة الطقس

e.g. It is going to be rainy in Cairo.

2 Describing the weather conditions: وصف حالة الطقس:

It's + حالة الطقس .

e.g. It's windy in Alexandria.

3 Giving strong advice: إعطاء نصيحة قوية:

(inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g. Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!

Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's (cold – windy – sunny) in Cairo today. It's 30 degrees.
2. Luxor is going to (has – have – had) a storm.
3. It (are – am – is) going to be windy in Alexandria.

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The weather in Egypt

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 degrees. The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights, when the temperature can go to 0 degrees. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.



It doesn't often rain in Cairo – there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south.

By the sea, it rains a lot more – Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!



Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	We have very cool summers in Egypt.	( )	( )
2	The desert has very hot days and very cold nights.	( )	( )
3	It doesn't rain by the sea.	( )	( )

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة: • لدينا تنوع رائع فى الطقس فى مصر، بالرغم من أنها عادة ما تكون جافة جدًا. لدينا صيف حار جدًا وتصل درجة الحرارة فى بعض الأحيان إلى 50 درجة فى بعض الأماكن! الشتاء لدينا أكثر برودة، ويمكن أن تنخفض درجات الحرارة وصولًا إلى حوالى 12 درجة. تتمتع الصحراء بمناخ خاص جدًا، مع أيام حارة جدًا وليالٍ شديدة البرودة، عندما تصل درجة الحرارة إلى 5 درجات. هذا يعنى أن الناس الذين يعيشون فى الصحراء يحاولون أن يحافظوا على البرودة فى النهار والدفء فى الليل.

• القاهرة لا تمطر كثيرًا- يوجد حوالى 25 ملم فقط من المطر كل عام. إنها قليلة جدًا عندما تنظر إلى لندن: لندن لديها حوالى 600 ملم لكل عام. الآن يمكنك أن ترى لماذا النيل مهم جدًا للجميع فى مصر أنه يجلب الماء من الجنوب.

• بجانب البحر، تمطر أكثر بكثير. الإسكندرية تمطر حوالى ثمانى مرات أكثر من القاهرة. هذا هو السبب فى أنها خضراء جدًا!!



B Extreme weather



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:





tornado
إعصار



tidal wave
موجة عارمة



strong winds /storm
رياح شديدة / عاصفة



sandstorm
عاصفة رملية



flood
فيضان



heat wave
موجة حارة

Extra vocabulary

weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	season	فصل من فصول السنة	type	نوع
above	فوق	shade	ظل	store	متجر
watermelon	بطيخة	grapes	عنب	lemon	ليمون
lemonade	عصير الليمون	kind (adj.)	طيب/ عطوف	lady	سيدة
son	ابن	worried (adj.)	قلقان	quiet (adj.)	هادئ
voice	صوت	floor	أرضية	nearby	بالقرب من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
stay	يبقى	stayed	happen	يحدث	happened
try	يجرب	tried	ask	يسأل/ يطلب	asked
knock	يطرق/ يخبط	knocked	reply	يرد/ يجيب	replied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
become	يصبح	became	give	يعطى	gave
buy	يشترى	bought	say	يقول	said

Expressions and Phrases

shady side	الجانب المظلل	hear a cry	يسمع صرخة
in her 70s	في السبعينيات من عمرها	in the day	خلال النهار
a bit open	مفتوح قليلًا	what to do	ماذا نفعله
fell down	تسقط أرضًا		



I can find it out: Egypt experienced the coldest weather in ten years in January 2022. Egypt has witnessed very cold weather during the daytime and frost at night-times for up to a month.

شهدت مصر أبرد طقس منذ عشر سنوات فى يناير ٢٠٢٢. شهدت مصر طقسًا شديد البرودة فى النهار وصقيعًا فى أوقات الليل لمدة تصل إلى شهر.

Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف إلى الكلمات الجديدة ودعه يقولها بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

My heat wave story

The beginning

1 The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade[(1)] and tried to drink lots of water. Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side of the street, and past all our friends' houses.

(1) ظل

The middle

2 Suddenly, as we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard a cry[(2)]. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s and lives with her son, but he goes to work in the day. Lamia and I were worried and Mrs Sohair's door was a bit open, so we knocked[(3)] and called 'Mrs Sohair!' At first there was no reply, then we heard a quiet voice, 'I'm here!' We went into the kitchen and she was on the floor! 'Help me!' she said. At first, we didn't know what to do, but then I ran outside and saw Mr Monib, who works nearby[(4)]. 'Mr Monib, please help Mrs Sohair!' I called. Mr Monib came running. We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto a chair, then we gave her lots of water and some of our fruit.

(2) صرخة
(3) يطرق الباب
(4) بالقرب من

The end

3 She said she went to the kitchen to get some water, but she felt ill and fell down because it was so hot. She couldn't get up. She was very happy we heard her, and we were happy we could help her!

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	The very hot summer became a sandstorm.	( )	( )
2	We should stay in the shade during a heat wave.	( )	( )
3	Talia and Lamia helped Mrs Sohair.	( )	( )

Parents' tips

Help your child read the story correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة بطريقة صحيحة.

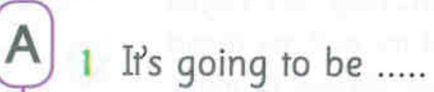
الترجمة:

- أصبح الصيف شديد الحرارة، تحدث الموجة الحارة عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة بشكل كبير، فوق 40 درجة، ولا يستطيع أحد فعل أى شىء. بقينا فى الظل وحاولنا شرب الكثير من الماء. طلبت أمى منى ومن وصديقتى لمياء الذهاب إلى المتجر لشراء البطيخ والعنب والليمون لصنع عصير الليمون لتبريدنا. ذهبنا إلى المتجر. عدنا إلى الجانب المظلل من الشارع، ومررنا على منازل أصدقائنا.
- فجأة ونحن نمر على منزل السيدة سهير سمعنا صرخة. السيدة سهير سيدة طيبة للغاية فى السبعينيات من عمرها وتعيش مع ابنها، لكنه يذهب إلى العمل فى النهار. شعرت أنا ولمياء بالقلق وكان باب السيدة سهير مفتوحًا بعض الشىء، لذلك طرقنا ونادينا «السيدة سهير!». فى البداية لم يكن هناك رد، ثم سمعنا صوتًا هادئًا، «أنا هنا!» ذهبنا إلى المطبخ وكانت على الأرض! قالت: «ساعدنى!» فى البداية، لم نكن نعرف ماذا نفعل، لكننى بعد ذلك ركضت إلى الخارج ورأيت السيد منيب الذى يعمل فى الجوار. «سيد منيب، من فضلك ساعد السيدة سهير!» ناديت. جاء السيد منيب راكضًا. ساعدنا جميعًا فى حمل السيدة سهير على كرسى، ثم أعطيناها الكثير من الماء وبعض الفاكهة.
- قالت إنها كانت ذاهبة إلى المطبخ للحصول على بعض الماء، لكنها شعرت بالمرض وسقطت على الأرض؛ لأن الجو كان شديد الحرارة. لم تستطع النهوض. كانت سعيدة للغاية؛ لأننا سمعناها وكنا سعداء لأننا استطعنا مساعدتها!




Lesson 1

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating



1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 4

A

1. It's going to be .....
2. We have very hot summers ..
3. It doesn't often rain in Cairo.
4. The Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt, ...

B

( ) There's about 25 mm of rain every year.

( ) it bring the water from the south.

( ) rainy in Cairo today.

( ) and the temperature goes to 50 degrees.

2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. When it's very hot and no one can do anything, it's called (flood – heat wave – tornado).
2. (When – Where – What) about Luxor?
3. In the winter, it is usually cold and (sunny – hot – rainy).
4. It's very (hot – cold – rainy) in the desert. The temperature can go to 50 degrees.




3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 4

cooler – a lot – weather – rain – summer

We have a nice variety of .... in Egypt. We have a very hot .... and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees! Our winters are .... It doesn't often .... in Cairo. Although by the sea, it rains .... more.



Parents' tips

(1) Help your child read and match.
(2) Help your child choose the correct words.
(3) Help your child fill in the gaps.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقوم بالتوصيل.
ساعد طفلك أن يختار الكلمات الصحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يملأ الفراغات.



TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 1



Listening

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

like – season – cooler – winter

Mona : What's your favorite ...., Noha?
Noha : I like the ....
Mona : Why do you .... it?
Noha : It's .... in winter.

Reading

2 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It doesn't often rain in Cairo – there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south. By the sea, it rains a lot more – Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!

A Choose the correct word:

1. There's only 25 mm of rain in (Cairo – London – Alexandria).
2. It rains (less – more – least) in London than it does in Cairo.
3. The Nile brings us water from the (east – south – north).

B Answer the following questions:

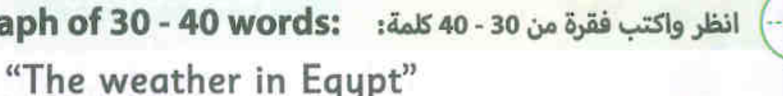
4. What's the capital of Egypt? ....
5. Why is the Nile important? ....



Writing

3 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5

"The weather in Egypt"



....
....
....
....



Assess your progress	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
★★★★★	Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!







Lesson 2



Language Focus



Using adverbs of frequency with the present simple:

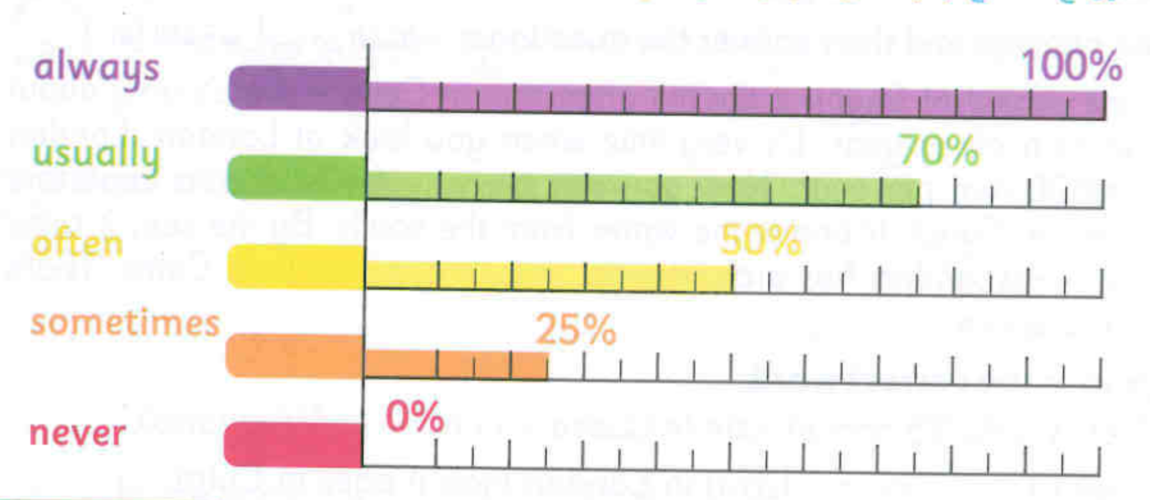
استخدام ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط:



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often we do things:

تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط لنقول كم مرة نفعل الشيء:



Form

Subj. + adverb of frequency + main verb.........

OR

Subj. + v. to be (am / is/ are) + adverb of frequency ....

e.g.



I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays.

أنا دائمًا ما أذهب إلى النادى فى أيام السبت المشمسة.

I'm always in bed at 11 pm.

أنا دائمًا ما أكون نائمة الساعة ١١ مساءً.





Wh-questions with "How often ...?" in the present simple tense:

السؤال باستخدام أداة الاستفهام «كم مرة...؟» فى زمن المضارع البسيط:

Question

How often	do	we/you/they/ فاعل جمع	+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....?
	does	he/she/ it / فاعل مفرد	

Answer

Subj. + adverb of frequency + main verb.........

OR

Subj. + v. to be (am / is/ are) + adverb of frequency ....

e.g.



How often do you play tennis?

كم مرة تلعب تنس؟

I never play tennis. I can't play!

أنا لا ألعب التنس أبدًا. لا أستطيع!



Check point

Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. She (often – always – never) drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
2. I usually (visit – visits – visiting) my grandma on Fridays.
3. A: How (often – many – much) do you go swimming?
   B: I sometimes go swimming on weekends.

Parents' tips

Help your child use adverbs of frequency correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم ظروف التكرار بطريقة صحيحة.




Lesson 2

14

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 5

often – eats – grandparents – helps – gets

Nahla always .... up early at 6.30 in the morning. She .... takes a short shower, then she reads a book. She .... breakfast at 8.00 with her parents. She .... her mom in the kitchen. The whole family visit .... at night.

2 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملاً صحيحة 4

1. do – How – they – tennis – often – play?




....

2. wake up – We – before – 7 am – sometimes.



....

3. football – plays – He – his friends – with – sometimes.




....

4. with – her sister – Marwa – always – goes to – the – park.



....

3 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5




"My daily routine"

get up – often – go – never



....
....
....
....



Parents' tips

(1) Help your child fill in gaps.
(2) Help your child re-arrange to write correct sentences or questions.
(3) Help your child write about the given topic.

ساعد طفلك أن يملأ الفراغات.
ساعد طفلك أن يعيد الترتيب ليكتب جملاً أو أسئلة صحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الموضوع المعطى.



TEST YOURSELF on Lesson 2





14



Listening

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

play – brother – do – often

Hany : How ....do you play tennis, Adel?
Adel : I always ....tennis.
Hany : Who .... you play with?
Adel : I usually play with my ....



Reading

2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1. How (old – many – often) do they play basketball?
2. Maha (never – sometimes – always) takes the bus to school. She takes it every day.
3. Nader never (eats – ate – eating) ice cream. He doesn't like it.
4. How often (do – does – did) Walaa make dinner?





Writing

3 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 6



1. how often does adel visit his friends

....

2. esraa always goes to the mall on fridays

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

STUDY



Lesson 3

Science



Natural resources المصادر الطبيعية





Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Natural resources from plant مصادر طبيعية من النبات




fruit
فاكهة


nuts
مكسرات


wood
خشب


cotton
قطن

Natural resources from animals مصادر طبيعية من الحيوانات

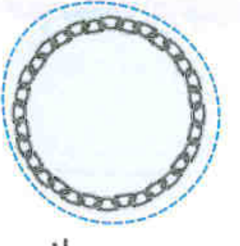



leather
جلد


eggs
بيض


milk
لبن

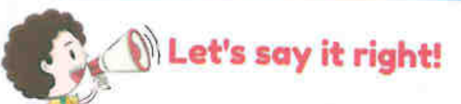
Mineral resources مصادر معدنية


silver
فضة


copper
نحاس


tin cans
علب صفيح


gold
ذهب



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (th) ينطقان /ð/ كما في (leather).

Extra vocabulary

amazing (adj.)	رائع	nature	الطبيعة	alive (adj.)	حي
forests	غابات	fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري	oil	نفط
coal	فحم	minerals	المعادن	the most (adj.)	الأكثر
transporting	نقل	goods	البضائع	furniture	الأثاث
energy	طاقة	polluted (adj.)	ملوث	lead	خام الرصاص
zinc	خام الزنك	jewelry	مجوهرات	pipes	أنابيب
cookers	بوتجازات	fridges	ثلاجات	economies	اقتصاديات
products	منتجات	countries	بلاد		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
use	يستخدم	used	renew	يتجدد	renewed
include	يتضمن	included			

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
build	يبني	built	give	يعطي	gave
keep	يحفظ/ يحافظ على	kept	make	يصنع	made

Expressions and Phrases

(be) called	يُسمى / يُدعى	stay alive	يبقى حيًّا
keep healthy	يحافظ على صحته		

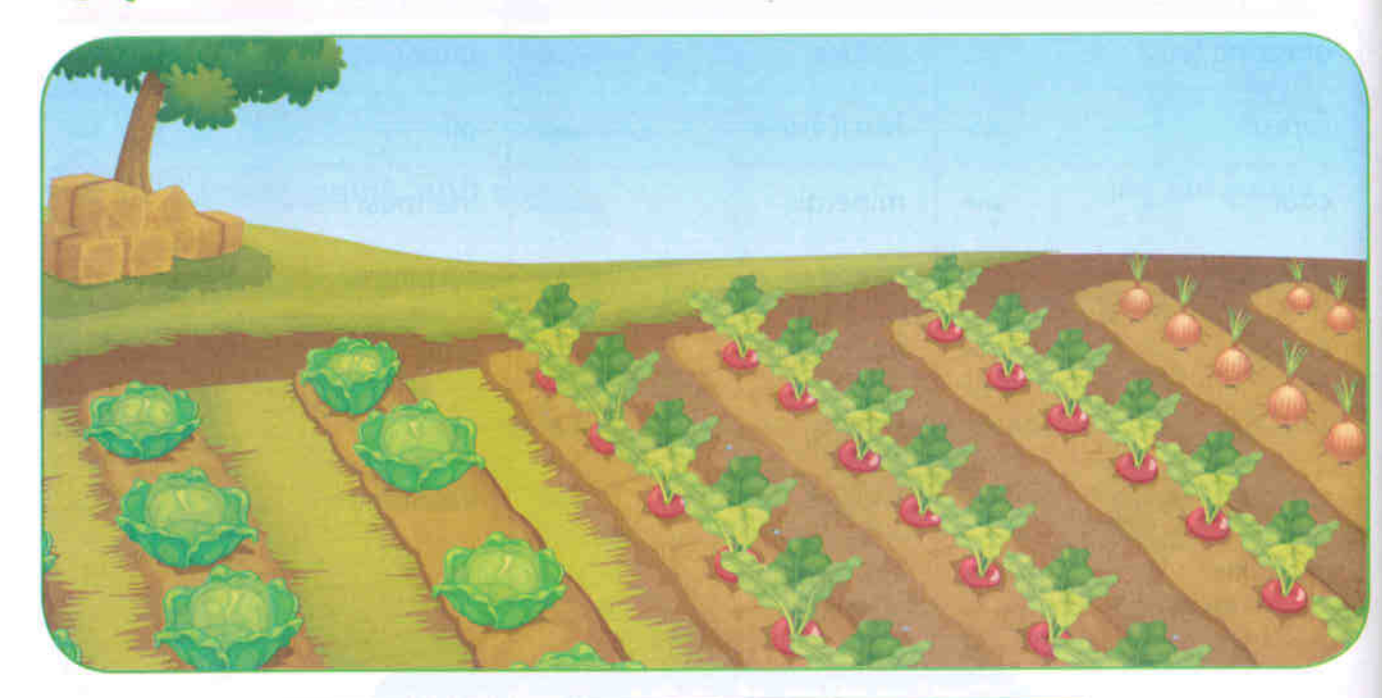
Parents' tips

Help your child identify the new words and let him/her say them correctly after listening to the correct pronunciation using the QR code.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الكلمات الجديدة، ودعه يقولها بطريقة صحيحة بعد الاستماع إلى النطق الصحيح باستخدام خاصية الـ QR code.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Our world is amazing. It gives us many things so we can have food, clothes, and build our houses. The things nature[1] gives us are called natural resources[2]. We can use these to stay alive[3] and keep healthy.
Some examples of natural resources are water, clean air, animals, forests, soil, fossil fuels like oil and coal, and minerals[4] like gold and copper[5].
Water is the most important of all natural resources because all living things need it to stay alive. We use it to drink, to give to our animals, and to grow plants. We also use it for cleaning, for clean energy, and for transporting people and goods.
Clean air is also important to keep us and our crops healthy. We make furniture from trees. We grow food in the soil. Fossil fuels[6] like oil, coal, and gas are also natural resources. They give us energy for our houses and fuel for our cars. But fossil fuels make the air polluted and we can't renew[7] them.

(1)	الطبيعة
(2)	مصادر طبيعية
(3)	يبقى حى
(4)	معادن
(5)	نحاس
(6)	وقود حفرى
(7)	يجدد

الترجمة:

- عالمنا مذهل. إنه يعطينا أشياء كثيرة حتى نتمكن من الحصول على الطعام، الملابس ونبنى بيوتنا. تسمى الأشياء التى تعطينا الطبيعة الموارد الطبيعية. يمكننا استخدامها للبقاء على قيد الحياة والحفاظ على صحتنا.
- بعض الأمثلة على الموارد الطبيعية هى: المياه، والهواء النظيف، والحيوانات، والغابات، التربة والوقود الحفرى مثل: النفط والفحم والمعادن مثل الذهب والنحاس.
- الماء هو أهم الموارد الطبيعية لأن جميع الأشياء الحية تحتاج للبقاء على قيد الحياة. نحن نستخدمه للشرب ولنعطى حيواناتنا وتنمو النباتات. نستخدمه أيضًا للتنظيف وللطاقة النظيفة ولأغراض نقل الأشخاص والبضائع.
- الهواء النظيف مهم أيضًا للحفاظ على صحتنا وصحة محاصيلنا. نحن نصنع أثاثًا من الأشجار. نحن نزرع الغذاء فى التربة. الوقود الحفرى مثل النفط والفحم والغاز أيضًا من الموارد الطبيعية. يعطوننا الطاقة لمنازلنا والوقود لسياراتنا. لكن الوقود الحفرى يجعل الهواء ملوثًا ولا يمكننا تجديده.

Other natural resources are minerals, and these include gold, silver, tin[8], copper, lead[9], and zinc[10]. We use gold and silver to make beautiful jewelry.
We use the other minerals to make things like cell phones, pipes in our houses, cookers and fridges in our kitchens, computers, and cars.
All these natural resources are important for our economies[11]. We take the natural resources and use them to make new products. We then sell the products to other countries and buy things too.

(8)	خام القصدير
(9)	خام الرصاص
(10)	زنك
(11)	اقتصاديات

Vocabulary Check

- good (adj.) «جيد»
- goods (n.) بضائع



Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	Nature gives us natural resources.	( )	( )
2	We can renew fossil fuels.	( )	( )
3	All natural resources are important for our economies.	( )	( )

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

- الموارد الطبيعية الأخرى هى المعادن، وتشمل: الذهب والفضة والقصدير، النحاس والرصاص والزنك. نستخدم الذهب والفضة لصنع المجوهرات الجميلة.
- نستخدم المعادن الأخرى فى صنع أشياء مثل: الهواتف المحمولة والمواسير فى منازلنا، والبوتجازات والثلاجات فى مطابخنا وأجهزة الكمبيوتر والسيارات.
- كل هذه الموارد الطبيعية مهمة لاقتصاداتنا. نأخذ الموارد الطبيعية ونستخدمها لصنع منتجات جديدة. ثم نبيع المنتجات إلى بلدان أخرى ونشترى الأشياء أيضًا.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



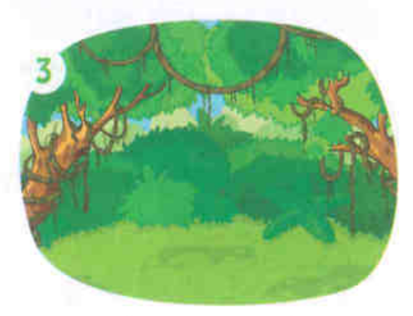
1 We can use soil to grow vegetables. We can sell these to other countries.

نحن نستخدم التربة لزراعة الخضراوات. يمكننا أن نبيع تلك المنتجات للدول الأخرى.



2 Gold is one of our mineral resources. We can use it to make beautiful jewelry.

الذهب واحد من المصادر المعدنية لدينا. نستخدمه لنصنع حلى جميلة.



3 Forests are important in our world. They give us clean air, and we can use wood from trees to make furniture.

الغابات هامة جدًّا فى عالمنا. إنها تعطينا هواء نظيفًا، ويمكننا استخدام الخشب من الأشجار فى صناعة الأثاث.



4 The most important natural resource is water. We need water to survive.

أهم المصادر الطبيعية على الإطلاق هى المياه. نحن نحتاج المياه لنبقى.

Look and write about the most important natural resources for our economy:

We have many natural resources in our world. Water is the most important of all natural resources. All living things need water to survive. There are also many mineral resources. We use gold and silver to make beautiful jewelry. We can buy these jewelry to other countries. All these natural resources are important for our economies.





Parents' tips

Help your child read about natural resources correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن المصادر الطبيعية بطريقة صحيحة.



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

1  ....

2  ....

3  ....

4  ....



2 Read the passage and answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The things nature gives us are called natural resources. We can use these to stay alive and to keep healthy. Water is the most important of all natural resources. We use it to drink, to give to our animals, and to grow plants. Clean air is also important to keep us and our crops healthy. We make furniture from trees. We grow food in the soil. Fossil fuels give us energy for our houses and fuel for our cars.



A Choose the correct word:



1 (Water – Air – Fossil fuels) is the most important natural resource.



2 We grow food in the (air – soil – houses).

3 (Water – Air – Fossil fuels) give us energy for our houses.

B Answer the following questions:

4 What are natural resources?

....

5 How do we make furniture?

....



3 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية:

1 fossil fuels like oil coal, and gas are also natural resources

....



2 what natural resources do we have in egypt

....

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child write the words.
(2) Help your child read the passage and answer.
(3) Help your child punctuate the sentence or question.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب الكلمات.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ثم يجيب.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة أو السؤال.





TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 3





Listening

14

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 4

nature – important – resources – Water

A : What are natural .... ?
B : They are the things .... gives us.
A : What is the most .... one of them?
B : .... is the most important of all natural resources.



Reading

2 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 5





fuels – water – minerals – air – wood

The most important natural resource is .... as we need it to survive. Clean .... is also very important. We use the .... from trees to make our furniture and houses. We get our energy from fossil .... As well as these, ... are also important for making things like fridges and cell phones.



Writing





3 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5

"Natural resources"

food – nature – healthy – minerals

....
....
....
....
....





Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

STUDY — Lesson 4









A Pronunciation



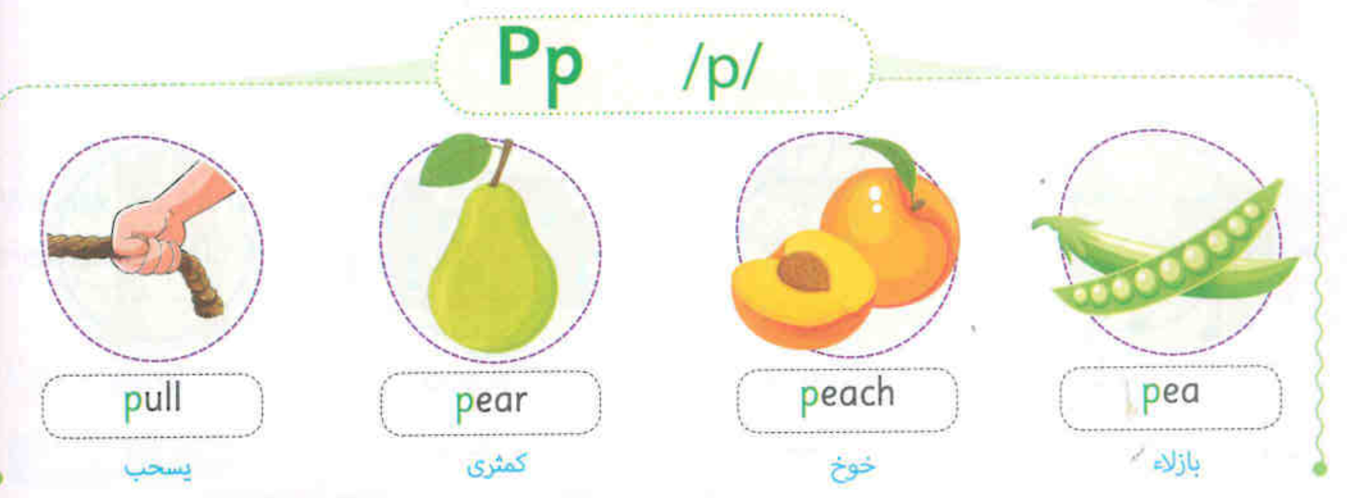


Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

We make the sounds /p/ and /b/ at the front of our mouths, by pressing our lips together. But they are very different.
The /p/ sound is unvoiced; vocal cords don't vibrate. This means air comes out of our mouth when we say it. When you say /p/, the paper moves.

نصنع الأصوات /p/ و /b/ في مقدمة أفواهنا، بالضغط على الشفاه معًا. لكنهم مختلفون جدًّا. الصوت /p/ غير مسموع، الأحبال الصوتية لا تتحرك. هذا يعني أن الهواء يخرج من أفواهنا عندما نقوله. عندما تقول /p/ تتحرك الورقة.

Pp /p/





The /b/ sound is voiced; vocal cords vibrate. This means the paper doesn't move when you say it.

الصوت / b / هو صوت مسموع، الأحبال الصوتية تتحرك؛ أي أن الورقة لا تتحرك عندما تقولها.

Bb /b/

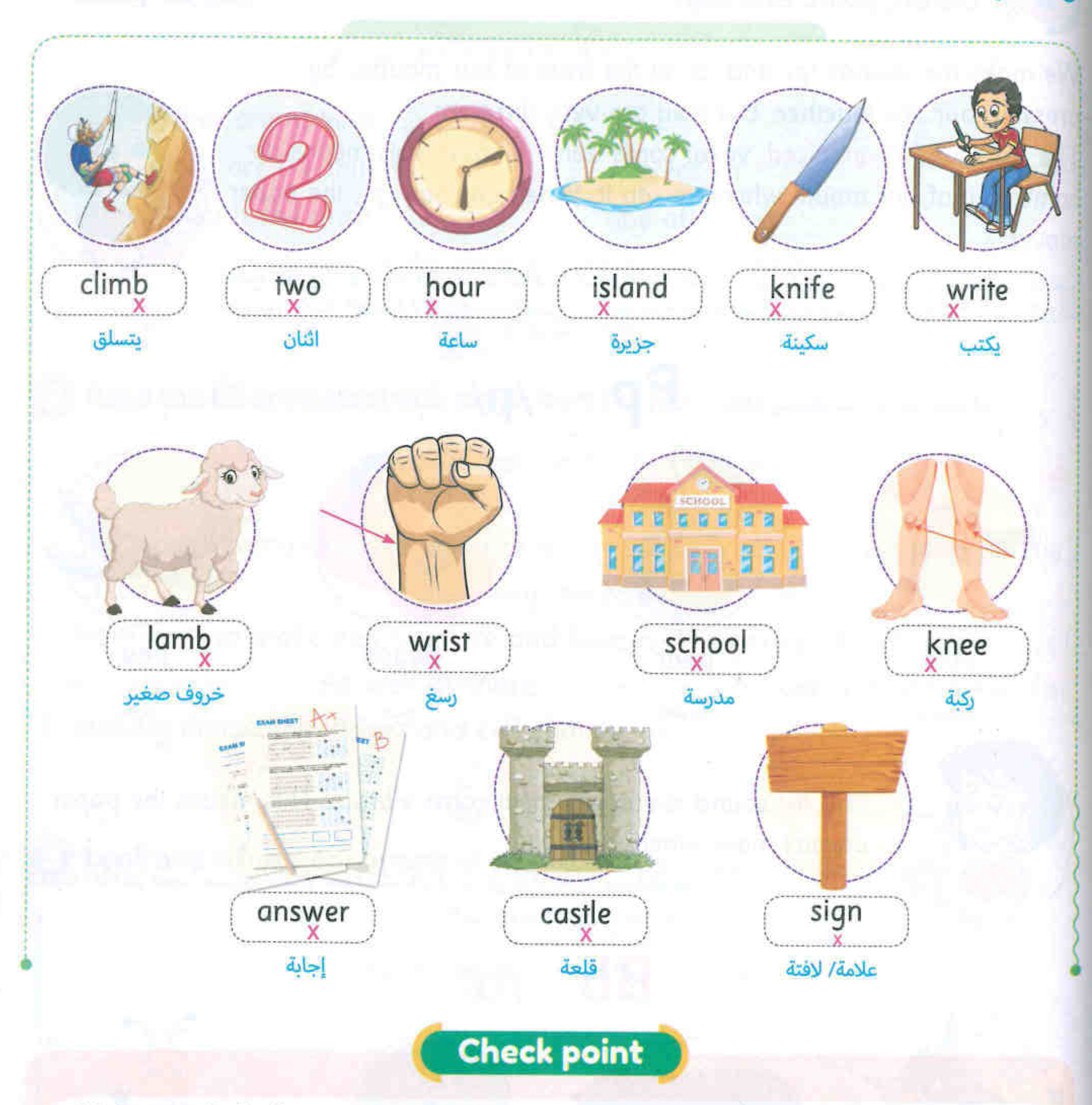


Silent letters



Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

In English, there are some words with silent letters – letters we don't pronounce.
في اللغة الإنجليزية، توجد بعض الكلمات ذات الحروف الصامتة - الحروف التي لا ننطقها.



Check point

Listen and circle: استمع وضع دائرة:

1 beach – peach   2 bee – pea   3 school – castle

Parents' tips
Help your child listen to differentiate between /p/ and /b/ sounds.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ليفرق بين الـ /p/ و /b/.

B Math

Units of measurements



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Length

To find out how long something is, we measure its length. To do this, we use kilometers (km), meters (m), centimeters (cm), and millimeters (mm).
لنجد طول شيء ما فإننا نقيس طوله. ونستخدم القياسات الآتية:
كيلو مترات (كم)، مترات (م)، سنتيمترات (سم)، ومليميترات (مم)

1 km = 1000 m
1 m = 100 cm
1 cm = 10 mm
1 km = 1,000 m = 100,000 cm = 1,000,000 mm

We ask about length using:
How long/ tall/ high/ far is it?
نسأل عن الطول باستخدام:
كم طول/ ارتفاع/ مسافة؟

e.g. 4,000,000 mm = 400,000 cm = 4000 m = 4 km

Weight



To find out how heavy something is, we measure its weight. To do this, we use kilograms (kg), grams (g), and milligrams (mg).
لنجد وزن شيء ما، فإننا نقيس وزنه مستخدمين القياسات الآتية: كيلو جرام (كجم)، جرام(جم)، ومليجرام (مجم).

1 kg = 1000 g
1 g = 1,000 mg
1 kg = 1,000 g = 1,000,000 mg

e.g. We ask about weight using:
How much does it weigh?
نسأل عن الوزن باستخدام:
كم الوزن؟

Parents' tips
Help your child use units of measurement correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم وحدات القياس بطريقة صحيحة.





Lesson 4

11

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle: استمع وضع دائرة: 4

1  
2 
3 
4

1	2	3	4
bee	bear	peach	pull
pea	pear	beach	bull

2 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1 We use (kilometers – centimeters – kilograms) to measure weight.

2 1.6 kilograms are (16 grams – 1600 grams – 16000 grams).

3 We use (kilograms – kilometers – milligrams) to measure length.

4 11 kilometers are (1100 meters – 11000 meters – 1011 meters).

3 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 3

1 salma and shady are playing on the beach

....

2 where do peas grow, nadia

....

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child listen and circle. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة.

(2) Help your child choose the correct answer. ساعد طفلك أن يختار الكلمات الصحيحة.

(3) Help your child punctuate the sentence or question. ساعد طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة أو السؤال.



TEST YOURSELF | on Lesson 4



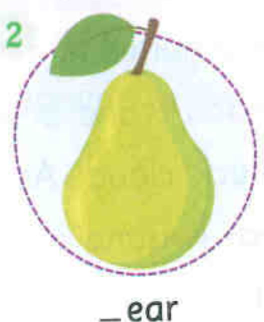



12

1 Listen and supply the missing letters: استمع وأكمل الحروف الناقصة: 4




1   _each

2  _ear

3  _each

4  _ull



2 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 5




two – hours – island – write – knee

He was climbing on an .... with his .... cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his .... But he was very lucky – he had a knife so he could make a bandage and then .... a message in the sand. Two .... later, people came to save him!



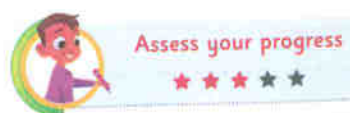
3 Look and write: انظر واكتب: 4

1  ....

2  ....

3  ....

4  ....





< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



Lesson 5
Writing



An account of extreme weather



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Tornado

I was at school with my classmates. Then it started to get dark[1]. We went outside[2]. Then I saw the tornado[3] and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near us, it was getting bigger and it was twisting around[4]. We could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses! When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. We could see it was moving slowly, and we could see it was damaging buildings[5]. The next day, we found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed[6] many homes and other buildings.



(1) تزداد قتامة
(2) بالخارج
(3) إعصار (تورنيدو)
(4) تلتف حولنا
(5) تدمر المباني
(6) دمر

Sandstorm

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins[7]. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm[8]. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Were they going to hit[9] us? I was really scared[10]. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

(7) أبناء وبنات العم
(8) عاصفة رملية
(9) يضرب
(10) خائف

Parents' tips
Help your child read the passage and understand the new words.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويفهم الكلمات الجديدة.

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Steps to write an account for an extreme weather:

خطوات كتابة تقرير لظروف الطقس القاسية:

- Write what the extreme weather is: اكتب ما هو الطقس القاسي:

1. Describe what happened. Use words like: first, then, finally.
   أوصف ما حدث مستخدمًا كلمات مثل: أولًا، بعد ذلك، في النهاية.
2. Write how people felt. اكتب كيف كان شعور الناس.
3. Use words like frightened - scared. استخدم كلمات مثل خائف.
4. Write what people did to face the extreme weather.
   اكتب ما فعله الناس لمواجهة الطقس القاسي.
5. Review the text for correct grammar and correct spelling.
   راجع النص لتتأكد من القواعد اللغوية والهجاء الصحيح.

Write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words about an extreme weather:

"Heat wave"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Parents' tips
Help your child write about an extreme weather correctly.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن طقس قاس بطريقة صحيحة.

STUDY



Lesson 6

Project

A leaflet on what to do in extreme weather



Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Steps to make a leaflet: خطوات إعداد منشور:

A)

- **Write what the extreme weather is.** - أكتب ما هو الطقس القاسى.

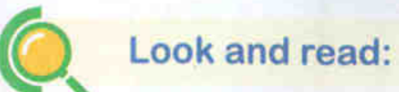
e.g. a storm

- **Write what happens in an extreme weather.** - أكتب ما يحدث خلال هذا الطقس القاسى.
- **Write short sentences.** - أكتب جملًا قصيرة.

B)

- **Write how to keep safe in an extreme weather.** - أكتب كيف تبقى آمنًا خلال الطقس القاسى.
- **Use the imperative form to give advice.** - أستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء النصيحة.

e.g. Start the sentence with the inf.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



How to keep safe in a storm



What might happen in a storm?

- There might be very strong winds.
- There might be heavy rain (1) and lightning (2).
- It might not be safe to go outside – electric wires (3) could fall.
- There might be a power cut (4).
- People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help.

How can you protect (5) yourself?

- Stay inside and keep dry.
- Make sure you have candles and torches (6) – there might be a power cut.
- Contact (7) your friends and family to check they are safe.
- Don't go anywhere by train – this could be unsafe (8).
- Help anyone who is afraid.
- Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes (9).
- Don't stand near wires – they could fall and give you an electric shock (10).



(9)	ضربات	(5)	يحمى	(1)	مطر غزير
(10)	صدمة كهربائية	(6)	كشافات	(2)	برق
		(7)	تواصل مع	(3)	أسلاك كهربائية
		(8)	غير آمن	(4)	انقطاع الكهرباء

Parents' tips

Help your child read correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة: كيف تصبح آمنًا فى عاصفة؟ • ما الذى يمكن أن يحدث فى العاصفة؟

• من الممكن أن تكون هناك رياح قوية. • من الممكن أن تحدث أمطار ثقيلة وبرق.

• قد لا يكون الخروج آمنًا - الأسلاك الكهربائية يمكن أن تقع. • قد يكون هناك انقطاع فى التيار الكهربائى.

• قد يكون الناس فى الشارع أو فى المنازل أو فى السيارات تحتاج إلى مساعدتك.

• كيف تستطيع حماية نفسك؟

• ابق فى الداخل وحافظ على جفافك. • تأكد من وجود الشموع والمصابيح -قد يكون هناك انقطاع فى التيار الكهربائى.

• اتصل بأصدقائك وعائلتك للتحقق من أنها آمنة. • لا تذهب إلى أى مكان بالقطار - فقد يكون هذا غير آمن.

• ساعد أى شخص خائف. • لا تقف تحت الأشجار فى حالة حدوث صواعق.

• لا تقف بالقرب من الأسلاك - فقد تسقط وتعطى لك صدمة كهربائية.

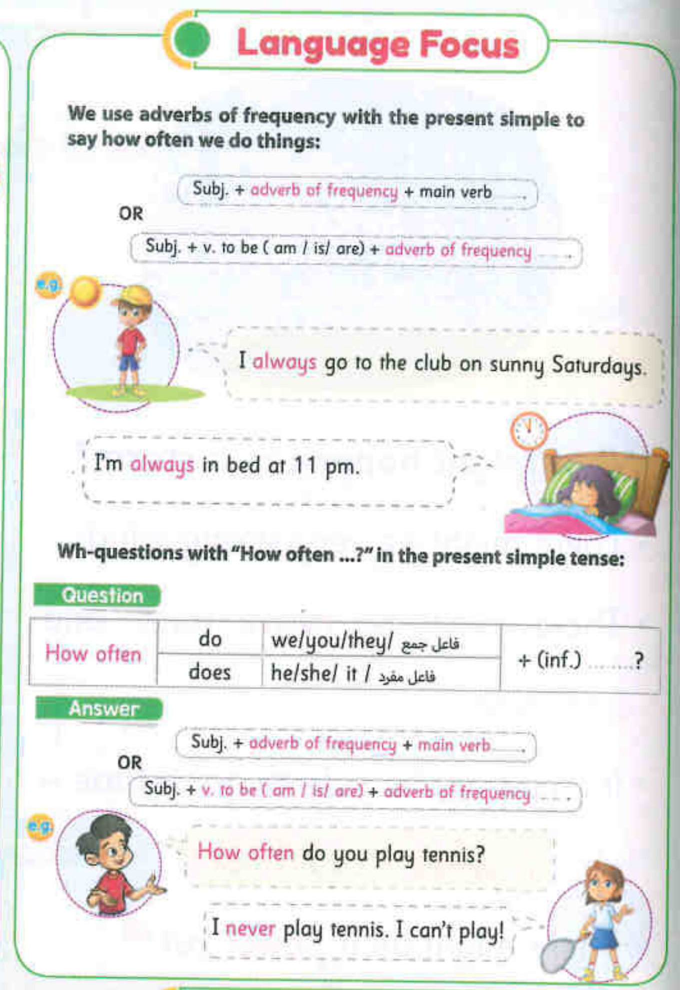
REVIEW



Vocabulary



Language Focus



We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often we do things:

Subj. + adverb of frequency + main verb .....

OR

Subj. + v. to be (am / is/ are) + adverb of frequency .....

e.g.

Wh-questions with "How often ...?" in the present simple tense:

Question

How often	do	we/you/they/ فاعل جمع	+ (inf.) ....?
	does	he/she/ it / فاعل مفرد	

Answer

Subj. + adverb of frequency + main verb .....

OR

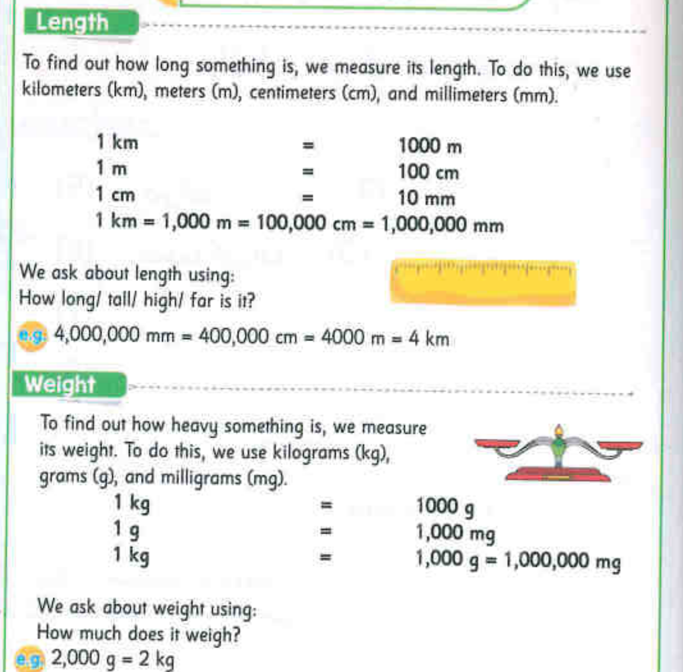
Subj. + v. to be (am / is/ are) + adverb of frequency .....

e.g.

Pronunciation



Math



Length

To find out how long something is, we measure its length. To do this, we use kilometers (km), meters (m), centimeters (cm), and millimeters (mm).

1 km	=	1000 m
1 m	=	100 cm
1 cm	=	10 mm

1 km = 1,000 m = 100,000 cm = 1,000,000 mm

We ask about length using:
How long/ tall/ high/ far is it?

e.g. 4,000,000 mm = 400,000 cm = 4000 m = 4 km

Weight

To find out how heavy something is, we measure its weight. To do this, we use kilograms (kg), grams (g), and milligrams (mg).

1 kg	=	1000 g
1 g	=	1,000 mg
1 kg	=	1,000 g = 1,000,000 mg

We ask about weight using:
How much does it weigh?

e.g. 2,000 g = 2 kg

Check Your Vocabulary



Lesson 1

سحابة	....	عاصفة	....
شمس	....	رياح	....
ثلج	....	قوس قزح	....
مطر	....	عاصف	....
مغيم	....	ممطر	....
مشمس	....	جليد	....
موجة عارمة	....	إعصار	....
رياح شديدة / عاصفة	....	عاصفة رملية	....
موجة حارة	....	فيضان	....

Lesson 3

فاكهة	....	جلد	....
نحاس	....	خشب	....
غابات	....	قطن	....
تربة	....	فضة	....
ذهب	....	لبن	....
مكسرات	....	علب صفيح	....
بيض	....	ماء	....

Lesson 4

خوخ	....	ثور	....
بازلاء	....	دب	....
كمثرى	....	يسحب	....
نحلة	....	شاطئ	....

WRITING TIME

Check your writing

 Put a comma (,) while writing lists.

 Start names, days of the week and months with a capital letter.

 **Look and write a paragraph of 30 -40 words:**

"The weather in Egypt"

variety – summer – winter – desert



We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees! Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 14 degrees. The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights.

"My daily routine"

weekends – morning – help – tennis



I love the weekends. I usually get up early at 7.00 in the morning. I sometimes take a shower and read a book. I help my mom make breakfast. In the afternoon, I always play tennis with my brother. We have a nice time together.

"Heat wave"

hot – summer – drink – cool



The very hot summer becomes a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees. To keep safe, stay in the shade. Try to drink lots of water. Open the windows when there's a cool wind. We must wear light cool clothing, too.

"Natural resources"

nature – healthy – fossil – minerals



The things that nature gives us are called natural resources. We can use these to stay alive and keep healthy. Some examples of natural resources are water, clean air, animals and forests. Fossil fuels like oil and coal are natural resources, too. We burn them to get energy.





AL ADWAA TEST 1



30



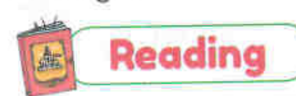


Listening

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: (2)

alive – natural – gives – important

Ola : What are .... resources, Nada?
Nada : They are the things that nature .... us.
Ola : Are they .... ?
Nada : Yes, we use them to stay .... and keep healthy.



Reading

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: (5)

A	B
1 A: How often do you watch TV?	( ) more than it does in Cairo.
2 Minerals like gold and copper ...	( ) measure how long something is.
3 We have very hot summers, ...	( ) B: I sometimes watch TV.
4 We use kilometers to ...	( ) are natural resources.
5 It rains in London much ...	( ) the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees.

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: (5)

1. A: How (often – old – many) does it rain in the desert? B: It never rains in the desert.
2. There was a lot of water during the (heat wave – sandstorm – flood).
3. Sohila (always – never – usually) goes swimming in the Nile. She can't swim.
4. Karim never (drinks – drank – drinking) soda. He thinks it's unhealthy.
5. Lead, zinc, and copper are (economies – foods – minerals).



4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: (5)

There are many natural resources in the environment around us. Clean air is so important to keep us and our crops healthy. We make furniture from trees. We grow food in the soil. Fossil fuels like oil, coal, and gas are also natural resources. They give us energy for our houses and fuel for our cars. But fossil fuels make the air polluted and we can't renew them.

A **Choose the correct word:**

1. We need clean (soil – fuels – air) to breathe and survive.
2. We grow food in the (trees – soil – air).
3. We can't renew (trees – natural resources – fossil fuels).

B **Answer the following questions:**

4. Where can we find natural resources?

....

5. What can we use trees for?

....



Writing



5 **Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences:** اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 5

1. need – survive – We – to – water.

....

2. does – How – an – much – weigh – apple?

....

3. sometimes – Nader – to – walks – school.

....

4. often – How – it – in – London – does – rain?

....

5. economies – Natural – are – important – resources – for our.

....



6 **Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words:** انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5

"The weather in Egypt"



variety – winter – summer – desert

....

....

....

....



7 **Punctuate the following sentences:** ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 3

1. oil coal, and gas are natural resources

....

2. why is the nile River important to us

....

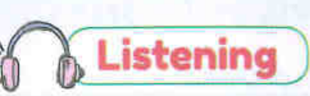




UNIT 6 AL ADWAA TEST 2



30





Listening

1 **Listen and complete:** استمع وأكمل: 2

hot – summer – temperature – weather

A : How is the .... in Egypt?
B : It's really hot in the ....
A : Yes, the .... can go to 50 degrees.
B : Oh! That's really ....



Reading

2 **Read and match:** اقرأ وصل: 5

A	B
1. In the desert, it's hot at day ...	( ) I stayed at home.
2. It has about 600 mm ...	( ) that nature gives us.
3. It was hot and sunny last week.	( ) measure the weight of something.
4. Natural resources are things ...	( ) and cold at night.
5. We use kilograms and grams to ...	( ) of rain in London per year.

3 **Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list:** اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 5

degrees – weather – temperature – summers – cooler

We have a nice variety of .... in Egypt. We have very hot .... The .... sometimes goes to 50 degrees! Our winters are ...., and the temperatures can go down to around 12 ....



4 **Read the passage and then answer the questions:** اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: 5

I'm Ola. My family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see some more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away.

A **Tick (True) or (False):**

	True	False
1 The family was driving in the desert.	( )	( )
2 It was dark during the storm.	( )	( )
3 Ola wasn't scared.	( )	( )

B **Answer the following questions:**

4 Where was the family going? ....

5 What did they do to keep safe during the storm? ....

Writing

5 **Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences:** اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 5

1 it's – Drink – much – when – hot – water.

....

2 soil – We – to grow – need – food.

....

3 Ola – work – never – is – after – tired.

....

4 a heat wave – A very – becomes – summer – hot.

....

5 often – How – he – does – eat – ice cream?

....

SB

6 **Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words:** انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة: 5

"Heat wave"

summer – hot – cool – wind

....

....

....

....

7 **Punctuate the following sentences:** ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 3

1 nadia s favorite season is the winter

....

2 how often does it rain in cairo

....

Review 2

- Review 2 General Practice
- Al-Adwaa Test Review 2







Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Vocabulary

famous (adj.)	مشهور	writer	كاتب
Ancient Greece	اليونان القديمة	story	قصة
fables	خرافات (اسم قصة)	moral	درس (هدف أخلاق)
teach (v.)	يدرس	helpful (adj.)	مساعد
patient (adj.)	صبور	blow (v.)	يهب
strong (adj.)	قوى	reply (v.)	يجيب
path	طريق/ مسار	traveler	مسافر
pull (v.)	يجذب (يشد)	let (v.)	يسمح/ يدع
tighter (adj.)	أكثر إحكامًا	tired (adj.)	مُتعَب

Expressions and Phrases

knock over	يُسقط	take off his coat	يخلع معطفه
came out	ظهرت	Oh dear!	يا إلهي!
that's better	هذا أفضل	blew away	هبت بعيدًا
(be) called	يُسمى/يُدعى		

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the new words and say them correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع للكلمات الجديدة ويقولها بطريقة صحيحة.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Aesop was a very famous writer in Ancient Greece. He wrote stories called 'fables' – they always had a moral[1]. A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful to other people. An example of a moral is: Be kind and patient with people.

The North Wind was trying to make the Sun angry. "I'm very strong," he said, "I'm stronger than you." He looked down and blew. He knocked over some trees on a path. "I'm not so sure you're stronger than me," replied the Sun, smiling.

At that moment, a man wearing a coat walked along the road. The Sun said to the Wind, "OK, let's see. Who can make the man take off his coat?" "Hmm", the Wind said, "Of course I'm going to win." He looked down at the traveler and he blew and blew. The man felt the Wind and he felt cold. He pulled his coat tighter[2] around him. He didn't let the wind blow off his coat. The Wind was angry, but he was tired and stopped.

Then the Sun came out and began to shine. "Oh dear![3]" said the man "It's so hot!" He got so hot, he took off his coat. "That's better," he said.

The Sun looked at the North Wind and said, "I won." The North Wind was angry and blew away!

(1) درس (هدف أخلاق)
(2) أكثر إحكامًا
(3) يا إلهي

Check point

Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

		True	False
1	Aesop was a very famous doctor.	( )	( )
2	A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful.	( )	( )
3	The North Wind was trying to make the Sun happy.	( )	( )

Parents' tips

Help your child read the passage correctly.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة بطريقة صحيحة.

الترجمة

- كان إيسوب كاتبًا مشهورًا جدًّا فى اليونان القديمة. كتب قصصًا تسمى «خرافات» - كان لديهم دائمًا هدف أخلاق. الأخلاق تعلمنا أن نكون طيبين ونساعد الآخرين. مثال على الأخلاق هو: كن طيبًا وصبورًا مع الناس.
- كانت ريح الشمال تحاول أن تثير غضب الشمس. فقال: «أنا قوى جدًّا، أنا أقوى منك. نظر إلى الأسفل ونفخ. لقد أسقط بعض الأشجار على الطريق. أجابت الشمس مبتسمة: «لست متأكدًا من أنك أقوى منى». فى تلك اللحظة سار رجل يرتدى معطفًا على طول الطريق. قالت الشمس للريح: «حسنًا ، دعنا نرى. من يستطيع أن يجعل الرجل يخلع معطفه؟ قالت الريح «هممم»، «بالطبع سأفوز». نظر إلى المسافر ونفخ. شعر الرجل بالريح ثم شعر بالبرد. فشد معطفه بقوة حوله. لم يدع الريح تطير معطفه. الريح كانت غاضبة ولكن كانت متعبة وتوقفت. ثم ظهرت الشمس وبدأت تشرق. قال الرجل: يا إلهى، أن الجو حار جدًّا. «لقد اشتعلت درجة حرارته لدرجة أنه خلع معطفه. قال «هذا أفضل». نظرت الشمس إلى الريح الشمالية وقالت: «لقد فزت». كانت ريح الشمال غاضبة وهبت بعيدًا!

REVIEW 2

GENERAL PRACTICE



1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

A greenhouse – feeling – problem – homework

Dad : Laila, what's the matter?

Laila : I'm .... worried. I can't do my ....

Dad : What's the .... ?

Laila : I have to explain the .... effect and it's quite difficult.

B sunlight – right – survive – need

Salma : What do plants need to .... ?

Mom : They need .... and water.

Salma : Do plants .... anything else?

Mom : Yes, they also need the .... climate.

2 Look and write: انظر واكتب:



A

1  ....

2  ....

3  ....
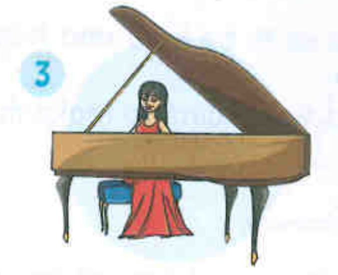
4  ....



B

1  ....

2  ....

3  ....

4  ....





3 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A

A	B
1 An ecosystem is a place ...	( ) the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees.
2 A heat wave is when ...	( ) We make beautiful jewelry from gold and silver.
3 There are many different animals in Egypt's deserts, ...	( ) where animals, plants, and other living things live together.
4 We have many natural resources like gold and silver.	( ) such as camels, gazelles, jackals, ibex, and foxes.



B

A	B
1 More than three million people work ...	( ) He wrote stories called "fables".
2 "Endangered" means that there are not ...	( ) because of the pollution that planes cause.
3 Aesop was a very famous writer in Ancient Greece.	( ) in tourism.
4 Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane ...	( ) many of plants or animals left in the world.

4 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

A

1 I must (doing – does – do) my English homework.

2 Last Monday, we (go – goes – went) to the Aswan Museum.

3 Plants need (sunlight – moonlight – sky) and water to survive.

4 I (help – have – eat) a shower at six o'clock.

B

1 We (was – were – is) listening to the radio yesterday at 4 pm.

2 Taba is a beautiful (greenhouse – eco-resort – school) in Egypt. You can find valleys and mountains there.

3 The hotel (chef – vet – nurse) had prepared a delicious breakfast.

4 Eco-tourists stay in small, local (coral – environment – hotels).

5 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة:

A

endangered – Red – coast – types – different

Egypt's .... includes the Mediterranean Sea and the .... Sea. In both of these seas, there are many .... plants and animals. Some of them, like turtles, birds, and mangrove trees are .... There are more than 800 .... of seaweed and more than 200 types of coral.

B

island – tour – fresh – monuments – temple

We have amazing .... guides in Nubia. Nubia has many historical ...., and interesting places to see, like the Great Temple of Ramses II, Elephantine Island, and the .... of Philae. One of my favorite trips last year was to the small .... of Abu Simbel. The hotel chef had prepared a delicious breakfast of bread, yogurt, and .... fruit for us.

6 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

A

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment. The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture. If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating! Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges.

A Tick (True or False):

	True	False
1 The local people are unfriendly.	( )	( )
2 If you like history, there is lots in Taba.	( )	( )
3 Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy hiking.	( )	( )

B Answer the following questions:

4 What can you find in Taba?

....

5 Where can eco-tourists stay?

....

B

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt's economy. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. The community respected them. Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. They could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market.

A Choose the correct word:

1 Wheat, corn and fax are (fruits – vegetables – grains) the craftsmen.

2 Farmers worked in fields which were near their (schools – hospitals – homes).

3 (Women – Bakers – Fishermen) cleaned the house and took care of their children.

B Answer the following questions:

4 What do farmers usually plant?

....

5 Where could Ancient Egyptian women work?

....

7 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

A

1 at – a cake – making – was – My – mom – yesterday – 3 pm.

....

2 hotels – in – stay – Eco-tourists – local – small.

....

3 can – find – fantastic – Where – you – wildlife?

....

4 need – water – sunlight – and – Plants – survive – to.

....

B

1. yogurt – eat – I – breakfast – for.

....

2. world – in – Everything – is – the natural – connected.

....

3. invited – to – the community – My mom – me – go – garden – to.

....

4. you – grandma – How often – visit – do – your?

....

8 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة:

A

"A trip to Nubia"

holiday – monuments – Abu Simbel – souvenirs

....

....

....

....

B

"Eco-tourism in Egypt "

environment – hotels – coral reefs – dive

....

....

....

....

9 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية:

A

1. how often do you play tennis, youssef

....

2. what's your favorite season, nour

....

B

1. a tourist is diving in the red sea.

....

2. what do we need to survive, yara

....

Review 2 Al-Adwaa Test





1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل: 2

do – waiters – million – tourism

Ahmed : How many people work in .... in Egypt?

Youssef : There are more than three .... people.

Ahmed : What do they ....?

Youssef : They are hotel managers, ..., chefs, boat captains, and hotel workers.

Reading

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل: 5

A

1. Some plants need animals, ...
2. Factories, transportation, and livestock farming ...
3. Taba is an excellent place for ...
4. I'm not keen on being outside,
5. People worked as scribes and farmers ...

B

( ) cause greenhouse gases.

( ) eco-tourism in Egypt.

( ) birds, and insects to carry seeds to other areas.

( ) in Ancient Egypt.

( ) so I wanted an office job.

3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة: 5

connected – survive – conditions – ecosystem – together

Everything in the natural world is .... An .... is a place where animals, plants, and other living things live .... Animals and plants need each other to live. They also need the suitable .... Animals eat plants, insects, and other animals to ....

4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Our world is amazing. It gives us many things, so we can have food, clothes, and build our houses. The things nature gives us are called natural resources. We can use them to stay alive and keep healthy. Some examples of natural resources are water, clean air, animals, forests, soil, fossil fuels like oil and coal, and minerals like gold and copper. Water is the most important of all natural resources because all living things need it to stay alive. We use it to drink, to give to our animals and grow plants. We also use it for cleaning, for clean energy, and for transporting people and goods. Clean air is also important to keep us and our crops healthy.

A Tick (True or False):

	True	False
1 We use natural resources to stay alive.	( )	( )
2 Oil and coal are fossil fuels.	( )	( )
3 We can renew fossil fuels.	( )	( )

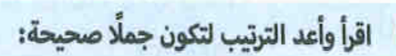
B Answer the following questions:

4 What does nature give us? ....

5 Why is clean air important? ....



Writing


5 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة: 5

1 look – the – Eco-tourists – after – environment.

....

2 like – beautiful – I – making – from – pots – clay.

....

3 need – to live – other – Animals – plants – and – each.

....

4 do – help – in the kitchen – mom – How often – you – your?

....

5 everything – could – Scribes – down – write.

....



6 Look and write a paragraph of 30 – 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 -40 كلمة: 5

"The weather in Egypt"

dry – summer – rain – desert

....
....
....
....



7 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية: 3

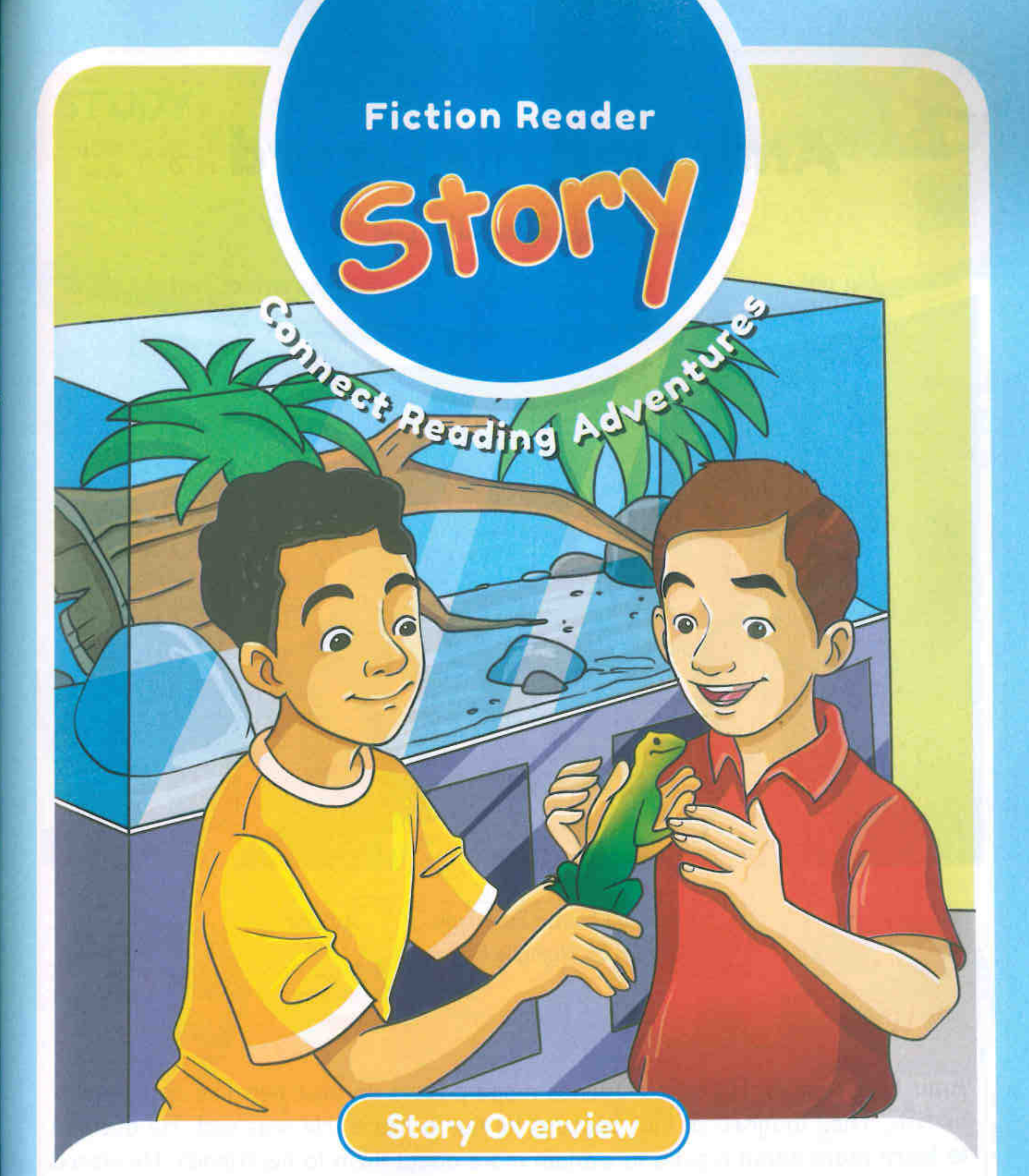



1 egypt's coast includes the mediterranean Sea

....

2 what was the weather like last wednesday

....



Story Overview

- By the end of the story, the student will be able to:

بنهاية القصة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- think of a problem and find solutions to it. - يفكر فى المشكلة ويوجد حلولًا لها.
- identify the characters and main events in a story. - يتعرف على الشخصيات والأحداث الرئيسية فى القصة.
- guess what is going to happen next in a story. - يخمن ما الذى سوف يحدث بعد ذلك فى القصة.
- give an opinion about a story. - يعطى رأيًا عن القصة.

Amir and His Lizard

Title
العنوان

أمير والسحلية الخاصة به



Retold by Louisa Essenhigh
Illustrated by Nathalie Ortega

Author
المؤلف

Illustrator
الرسام

Warm up

Amir likes reptiles. His school friends made posters on their pets like cats, rabbits or fish. They laughed at him because he has a lizard. He was sad. He decided to learn more about reptiles to explain more about them to his friends. He visited a reptile club. He met a herpetologist and knew more information about reptiles. He went with him on a field trip to look for reptiles. The expert gave a talk about reptiles at Amir's school and Amir was his helper. Amir's friends were very excited and Amir was very happy.

يحب أمير الزواحف. صنع أصدقاؤه فى المدرسة ملصقات عن الحيوانات الأليفة الخاصة بهم مثل: القطط، الأرانب والأسماك. سخر الأصدقاء منه لأنه يملك سحلية. كان أمير حزينًا. قرر أمير أن يتعلم أكثر عن الزواحف ليشرح أكثر عن الزواحف لأصدقائه. زار ناديًا لمحبى الزواحف. التقى بإخصائى زواحف وعرف معلومات أكثر عن الزواحف. ذهب أمير معه فى رحلة ميدانية للبحث عن الزواحف. ألقى الخبير حديثًا عن الزواحف فى مدرسة أمير وكان أمير المساعد الخاص به. كان أصدقاء أمير متحمسين للغاية، وكان أمير سعيدًا جدًا.







A Main vocabulary





Listen, point and say: استمع، أشر وقل:




dangerous خطير


gecko برص


lizard سحلية


reptiles زواحف


rock صخرة


hamster هامستر (نوع من أنواع الفئران)


herpetologist إخصائى زواحف


reptile club نادى محبى الزواحف


online عبر الإنترنت


molokhia ملوخية (أكلة مصرية)


chicken دجاج


talks خطابات


poster ملصق


rabbit أرنب


snake ثعبان


tortoise سلحفاة برية



Extra vocabulary

together	معًا/ سويًا	pet	حيوان أليف	explain (v.)	يبين / يوضح
amazing (adj.)	مدهش	show (v.)	يعرض	laugh (v.)	يضحك
strange (adj.)	غريب	ugly (adj.)	قبيح	kindly	بلطف/ بعطف
enjoy (v.)	يستمتع	nearby	مجاور	scientist	عالم
smile (v.)	يبتسم	field trip	رحلة ميدانية	safe (adj.)	آمن
soon	باكرًا/ عاجلًا	awesome (adj.)	رائع	special (adj.)	خاص/ مميز
wonder (v.)	يتساءل	surprise	مفاجأة	bring (v.)	يحضر
hold (v.)	يمسك/ يحمل	choose (v.)	يختار	feed (v.)	يطعم

Expressions and Phrases

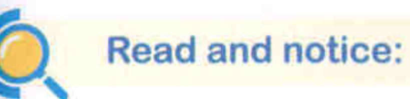
What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	Don't you feel well?	ألست على ما يرام؟
What happened?	ماذا حدث؟	That's a good idea.	إنها فكرة رائعة.
later that evening	لاحقًا هذا المساء	You are very welcome.	على الرحب والسعة/ العفو.
What a cool job!	يا لها من وظيفة رائعة!	look after	يعتني بـ
be careful	كن حريصًا	give a talk	يلقي حديثًا (خطابًا)
of course	بالطبع	It was really cool.	كان حقًا رائعًا

Parents' tips

Help your child listen to the vocabulary using the QR code, then let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly.

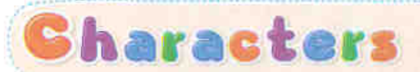
ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى الكلمات باستخدام خاصية QR code ثم دعه يقول ما يسمع بطريقة صحيحة.





B Story Elements

Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

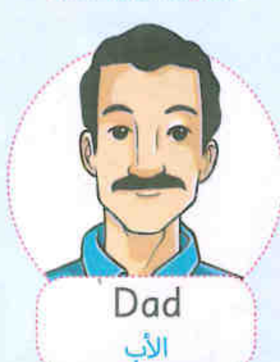


Characters الشخصيات


Amir
أمير


Mariam
مريم


Mom
الأم


Dad
الأب


Lizzy
ليزي

Youssef
يوسف


Hany
هاني


Mr Bassam
أستاذ بسام



المكان



Amir's house
منزل أمير



Amir's school
مدرسة أمير



reptile club
نادى محبى الزواحف



الحبكة



The Beginning

Amir was sad at lunch. He showed his poster on his pet - Lizzy, at school and his friends said it was ugly. Dad advised Amir to know more about reptiles and Amir found a reptile club online and wanted to visit it.

كان أمير حزينًا وقت تناول الغداء، عرض أمير الملصق الخاص بحيوانه الأليف (ليزى) على أصدقائه في المدرسة، وقال أصدقاؤه إنه قبيح. نصح والد أمير ابنه أن يعرف أكثر عن الزواحف. بحث أمير عبر الإنترنت فوجد ناديًا لمحبى الزواحف، هو يريد زيارته.



The Middle

Amir visited the reptile club and met there a herpetologist. He showed Amir different types of reptiles. He went on a field trip to look around. He could know more about reptiles.

زار أمير نادى محبى الزواحف وقابل هناك إخصائى زواحف. عرض إخصائى الزواحف على أمير أنواعًا مختلفة من الزواحف. ذهب أمير فى رحلة ميدانية للبحث عن الزواحف. استطاع أمير معرفة المزيد عن الزواحف.



The End

Hany – the herpetologist – went to Amir's school. He gave a talk about reptiles and chose Amir to be his helper. All Amir's friends enjoyed the talk and said to Amir that they were sorry to say that Lizzy was ugly.

ذهب هانى – إخصائى الزواحف – إلى مدرسة أمير. ألقى خطاب عن الزواحف واختار أمير ليكون مساعده. استمتع كل أصدقاء أمير بالحديث، ثم اعتذروا لصديقهم أنهم قالوا على «ليزى» قبيحة.

Parents' tips

Discuss with your child the story elements like characters, setting, and plot "the beginning, the middle, and the end".

ناقش مع طفلك عناصر القصة مثل: الشخصيات، المكان، الزمان، والحبكة (البداية والمنتصف والنهاية).



Story



Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

The Beginning

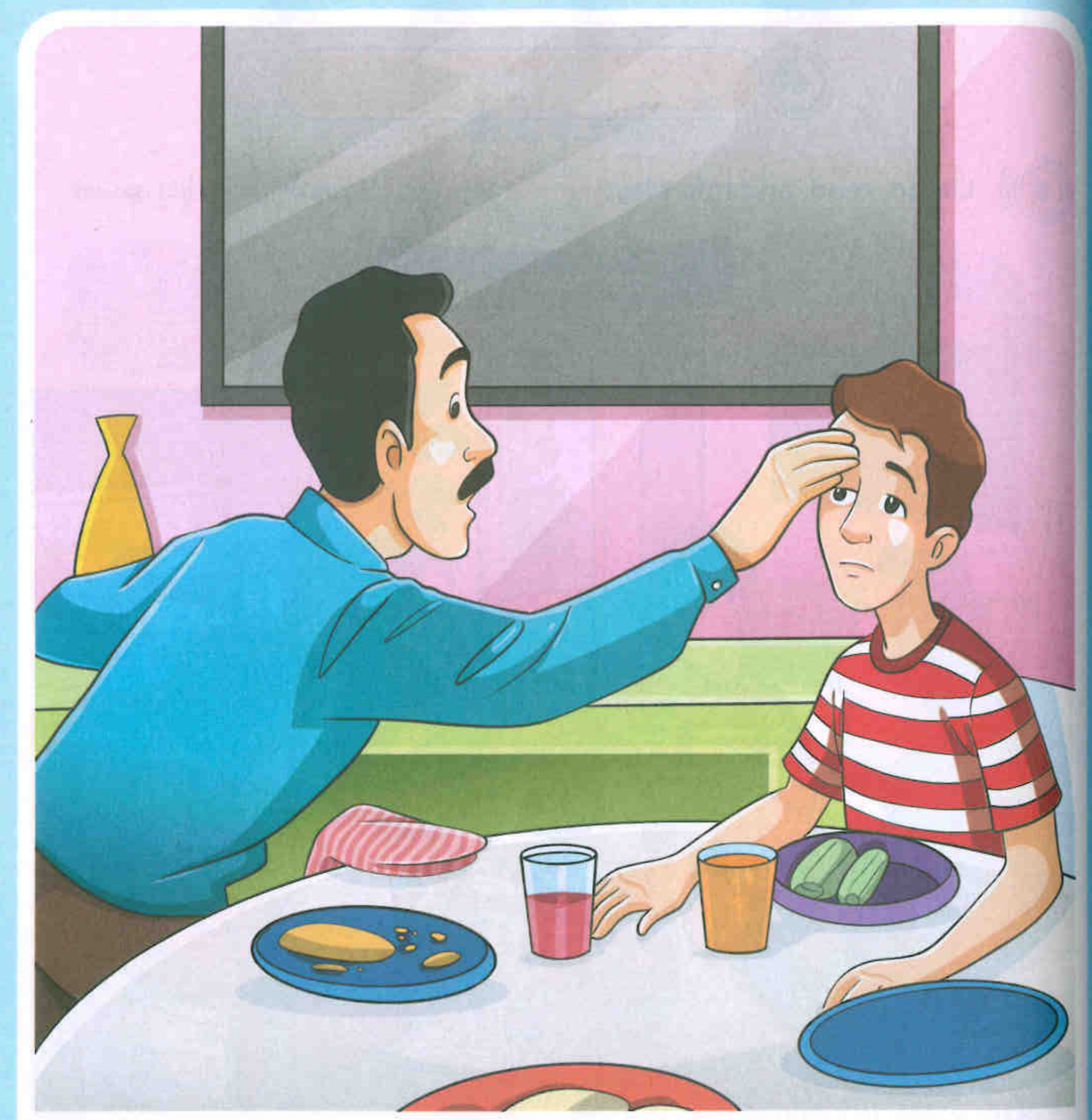


Amir, Mariam, Mom, and Dad are having lunch together. Mom cooked Amir's favorite dish, molokhia and chicken. But Amir isn't happy.
"What's the matter, Amir? Don't you like your lunch?" asked Mom.
"The food is delicious, thanks, Mom," replied Amir. He sounded sad.

يتناول كل من أمير، مريم، الأم والأب وجبة الغداء. قامت الأم بطهى طبق أمير المفضل وهو: ملوخية ودجاج. لكن أمير ليس سعيدًا.
سألت الأم: «ماذا بك؟ يا أمير؟ ألم يعجبك الغداء؟».
أجاب أمير : الطعام لذيذ. شكرًا يا أمى. يبدو الحزن على أمير.

Vocabulary

favorite (adj.)	مفضل	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ
sound (v.)	يبدو	sad (adj.)	حزين



"What's the matter, Amir?" asked Dad. "Don't you feel well?"
"I'm fine, Dad. But I didn't have a very happy day at school," replied Amir.
"Oh, no! You usually love school. What happened?"

سأل الأب: ماذا بك، يا أمير؟ ألست على ما يرام؟

أجاب أمير: «أنا بخير يا أبى. لكن لم يسر يومى بشكل جيد اليوم فى المدرسة».

«يا إلهى! عادة ما تحب المدرسة. ماذا حدث؟».

Vocabulary

What's the matter?	ماذا بك؟	feel (v.)	يشعر
love (v.)	يحب	What happened?	ماذا حدث؟



"We showed our favorite pet posters today," explained Amir.
"But your poster was amazing!" said Mariam. "Why are you sad?"
"Well, everyone else's poster showed cats, rabbits, hamsters or fish – you know, pets everyone has. And my poster was about Lizzy, my lizard."

وضح أمير: «لقد عرضنا الملصقات الخاصة بحيواناتنا الأليفة المفضلة اليوم».

قالت مريم: «لكن كان الملصق الخاص بك رائعًا!» «لماذا أنت حزين؟».

«حسنًا، ملصقات الآخرين تضمنت: قططًا، أرانب، هامستر (نوع من أنواع الفئران) أو أسماكًا – حيوانات أليفة يقوم الجميع بتربيتها - كما تعلمين. كان ملصقى عن «ليزى» السحلية الخاصة بى».

Vocabulary

posters	ملصقات	amazing (adj.)	رائع
hamsters	هامستر (نوع من أنواع الفئران)	lizard	سحلية

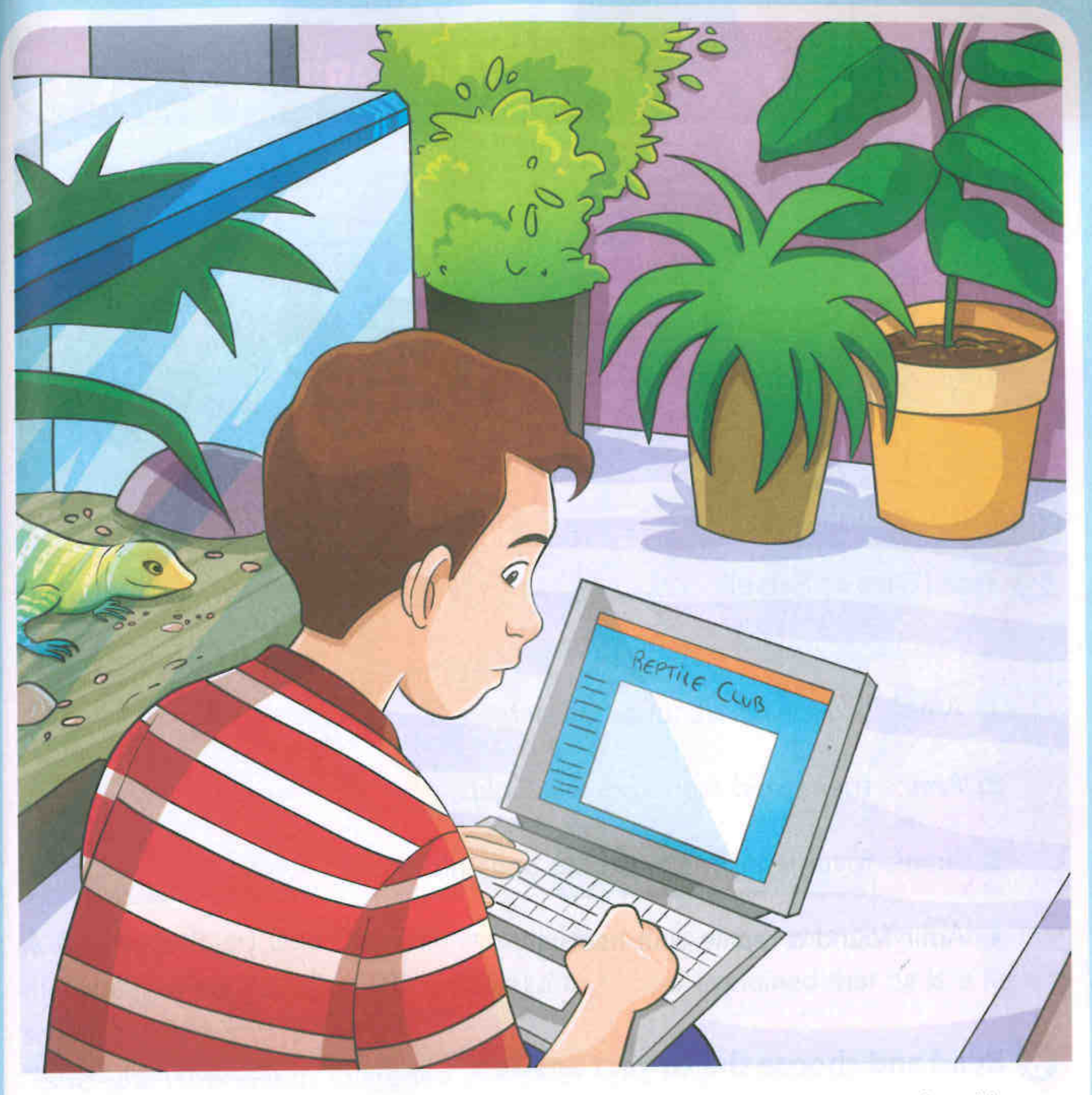


When I showed my poster, everyone laughed. They said, "What a strange pet!" And Youssef said, "Lizzy is ugly!" said Amir, almost in tears.
"Listen," said Dad kindly. 'People sometimes say things like that when they don't know enough information. The best you can do is to explain why Lizzy is such a good pet! Learn more about reptiles, and explain why they're amazing, not ugly!"
"That's a good idea, Dad. I'll do that." Amir felt happier and started to enjoy his molokhia.

ضحك الجميع عندما عرضت عليهم الملصق الخاص بى. قال الجميع: «يا له من حيوان أليف غريب!».
«قال أمير وهو متمالك دموعه (على وشك البكاء)» قال يوسف: «ليزى قبيحة».
قال الأب بلطف «اسمع! يقول الناس أحيانًا مثل هذه الأشياء عندما لا يعرفون المعلومات الكافية. أفضل شىء يمكنك القيام به هو أن توضح لماذا تعتبر «ليزى» حيوانًا أليفًا جيدًا. تعلم المزيد عن الزواحف ووضح لهم لماذا هى حيوانات رائعة وليست قبيحة!».
«إنها فكرة جيدة يا أبى. سأفعل ذلك. شعر أمير بسعادة أكثر، وبدأ بالاستمتاع بطبق الملوخية».

Vocabulary

strange (adj.)	غريب	tears	دموع
information	معلومات	reptiles	زواحف



Later that evening, Amir looked online. He found a reptile club nearby. He sent an email to ask if he could visit. He was very excited when he got an email saying, "Yes, you're very welcome to visit us!"

لاحقًا هذا المساء، بدأ أمير بالبحث عبر الإنترنت. فوجد ناديًا لمحبى الزواحف بالقرب منه. أرسل بريدًا إلكترونيًا (إيميلًا) ليسأل إذا كان بإمكانه زيارتهم. كان متحمسًا للغاية عندما تلقى بريدًا إلكترونيًا (إيميلًا) يقول: «نعم، إنه مرحب جدًّا بك لزيارتنا!».

Vocabulary

later that evening	لاحقًا هذا المساء	reptile club	نادى محبى الزواحف
excited (adj.)	متحمس	email	بريد إلكترونى (إيميل)

PRACTICE  Story The Beginning

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

1  ....

2  ....

3  ....

4  ....

2 Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

	True	False
1 Amir's poster was about a hamster.	( )	( )
2 Amir's friend said that Lizzy was ugly.	( )	( )
3 Amir's favorite dish is molokhia and chicken.	( )	( )
4 Amir found a reptile club nearby.	( )	( )

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Mom, Dad, Amir and Mariam were having (dinner – breakfast – lunch) together.

2 When Amir showed his poster, everyone (clapped – laughed – cried).

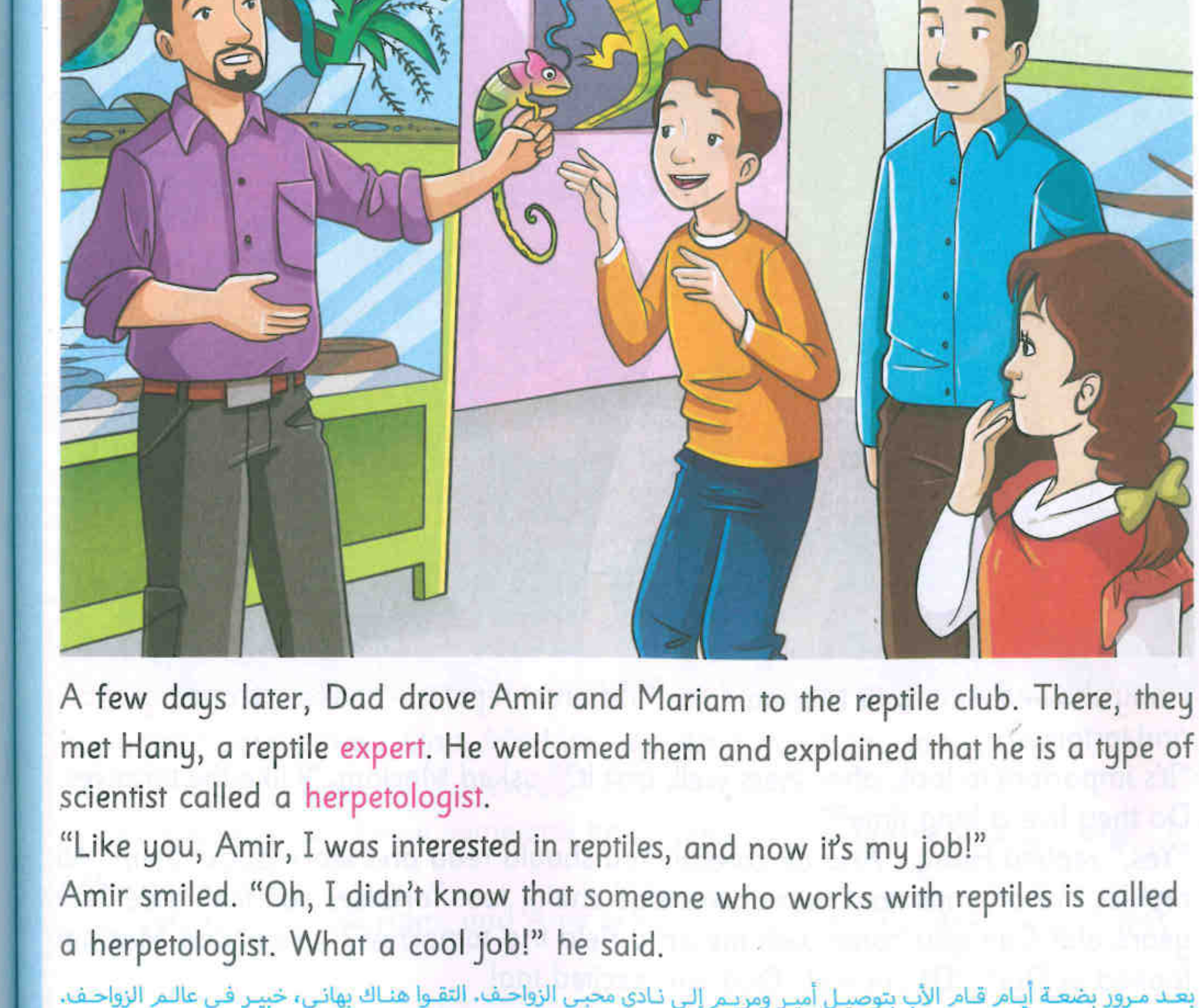
3 Dad asked Amir to learn more about (reptiles – horses – cats).

4 Amir sent a/an (letter – email – paper) to the reptile club.

Parents' tips
(1) Help your child write the words.
(2) Help your child tick (True) or (False).
(3) Help your child choose the correct words.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب الكلمات.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع (صح) أو (خطأ)
ساعد طفلك أن يختار الكلمات الصحيحة.

The Middle



A few days later, Dad drove Amir and Mariam to the reptile club. There, they met Hany, a reptile expert. He welcomed them and explained that he is a type of scientist called a herpetologist.
"Like you, Amir, I was interested in reptiles, and now it's my job!"
Amir smiled. "Oh, I didn't know that someone who works with reptiles is called a herpetologist. What a cool job!" he said.

بعد مرور بضعة أيام قام الأب بتوصيل أمير ومريم إلى نادى محبى الزواحف. التقوا هناك بهانى، خبير فى عالم الزواحف.
رحب هانى بهم ووضح لهم أنه يعمل كعالم يسمى بـ «إخصائى زواحف».
«مثلك يا أمير، أنا كنت مهتمًا بالزواحف، والآن هى مهنتى.»
ابتسم أمير قائلًا: «أوه، لم أكن أعلم أن من يعمل فى عالم الزواحف يطلق عليه «إخصائى زواحف». يا لها من وظيفة رائعة!».

Vocabulary

expert	خبير	herpetologist	عالم زواحف
cool (adj.)	رائع	job	وظيفة



Hany showed Amir and Mariam lots of different reptiles – snakes, lizards, geckos, and tortoises.
"It's important to look after them well, isn't it?" asked Mariam. "I like the tortoises. Do they live a long time?"
"Yes," replied Hany. "And be careful. You should read and learn about them. All reptiles are an important part of the food chain, too. Tortoises can live to be 100 years old! Can you come with me on a field trip tomorrow?" Amir and Mariam looked at Dad. "Of course!" Dad was excited too!

عرض هانى على أمير ومريم أنواعًا مختلفة من الزواحف كالثعابين والسحالى والأبراص والسلاحف البرية.
سألت مريم «من الضرورى الاعتناء بهم جيدًا، أليس كذلك؟» أنا أحب السلاحف البرية. «هل تعيش لفترات طويلة؟».
أجاب هانى: «نعم. وكونى حذرة. يجب عليك أن تقرأى وتتعلمى عنهم. جميع الزواحف جزء مهم من السلسلة الغذائية أيضًا.
تستطيع السلاحف البرية أن تعيش أكثر من مائة عام. هل يمكنكم أن تأتوا معى غدًا فى رحلة ميدانية؟».
نظر أمير ومريم إلى الأب. قال الأب: «بالطبع». كان الأب متحمسًا هو أيضًا.

Vocabulary

look after	يعتنى بـ	food chain	سلسلة غذائية
field trip	رحلة ميدانية	of course	بالطبع

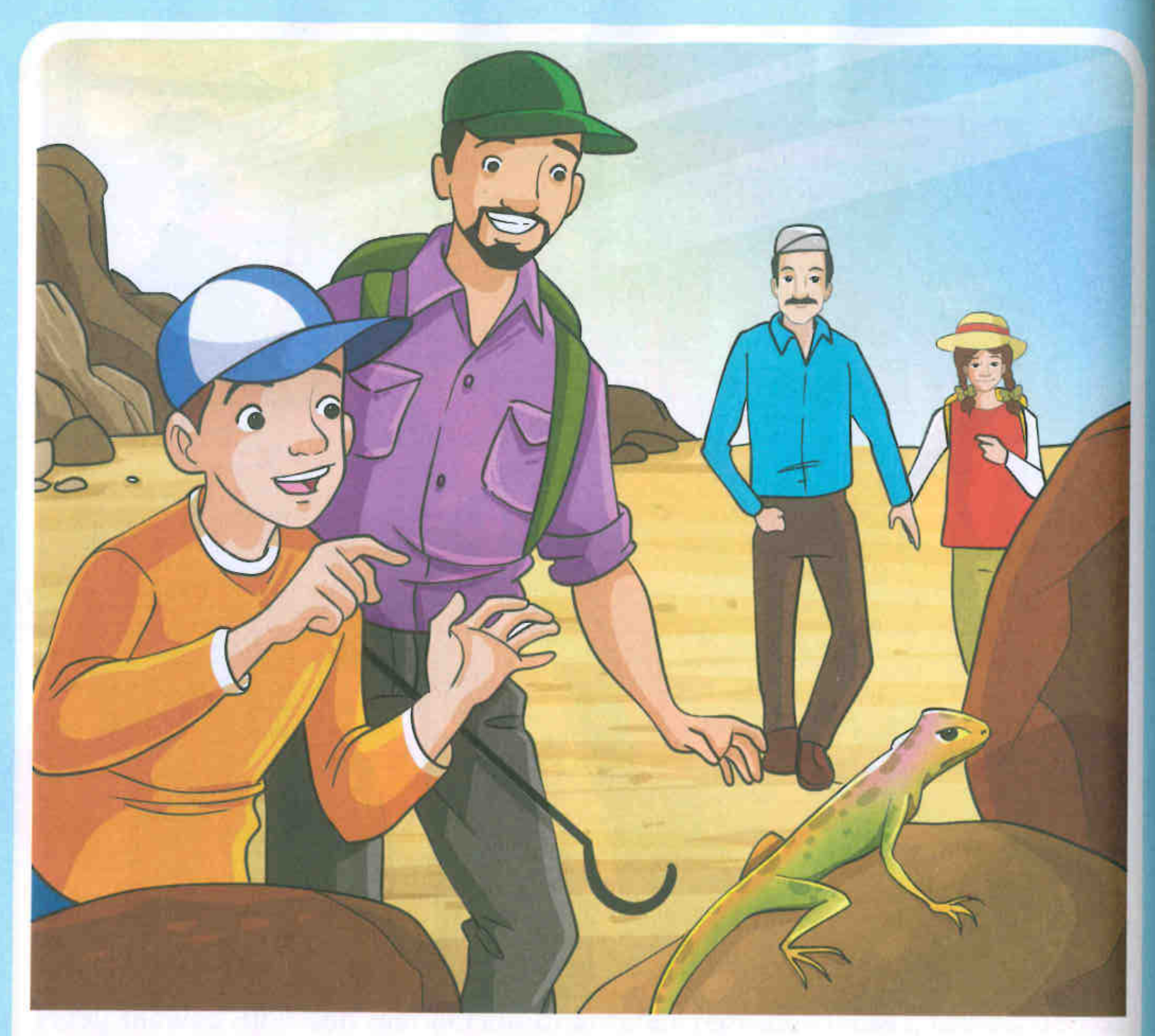


Early the next morning, Dad, Mariam, and Amir met Hany at the club.
"It's important to have the right tools," Hany explained.
"I love reptiles, but I know some can be dangerous. But you're safe with me! Ready? Let's go!"
Soon, Hany, Dad, Mariam, and Amir left for a very special desert, which was not far from Cairo.

فى الصباح الباكر لليوم التالى، التقى الأب ومريم وأمير بهانى فى النادى.
أوضح هانى: «من الضرورى أن تمتلك الأدوات الصحيحة».
«أنا أحب الزواحف، لكن أعرف أن البعض يمكن أن تكون خطيرة. لكنكم بأمان معى! هل أنتم مستعدون؟ هيا بنا!».
غادر هانى، الأب، مريم وأمير باكرًا إلى صحراء خاصة جدًا لم تكن بعيدة عن القاهرة.

Vocabulary

right (adj.)	صحيح	tools	أدوات
dangerous (adj.)	خطير	safe (adj.)	آمن



When they arrived, they spent some time looking around. Hany showed them the best places to look. Suddenly, Amir found a gecko on a rock!
"Look!" he said. "What an amazing blue color!" I thought all geckos were brown!"
"No, they can be different colors. Some of them can even change color!" said Hany.
Amir was very happy.

بمجرد أن وصلوا، قضوا بعض الوقت في البحث حولهم. أرشدهم هاني إلى أفضل الأماكن للبحث فيها. فجأة وجد أمير برصًا على صخرة. قال: «انظروا!» «يا له من لون أزرق رائع!» «اعتقدت أن كل الأبراص كانت بنية اللون!».
«لا ، يمكن أن تكون ألوان مختلفة. يمكن لبعض منهم حتى تغيير اللون!» قال هاني.
كان أمير سعيدًا جدًّا.

Vocabulary

look around	ينظر حوله	suddenly	فجأة
rock	صخرة	change (v.)	يغير

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

gecko – tools – expert – trip

1. Hany is a reptile ....
2. Can you come with me on a field .... tomorrow?
3. It's important to have the right ....
4. Suddenly, Amir found a .... on a rock!

2 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة:

looking – live – chain – herpetologist

1. Tortoises can .... to be 100 years old.
2. Reptiles are an important part of the food ....
3. Someone who works with reptiles is called a ....
4. They spent some time .... around.

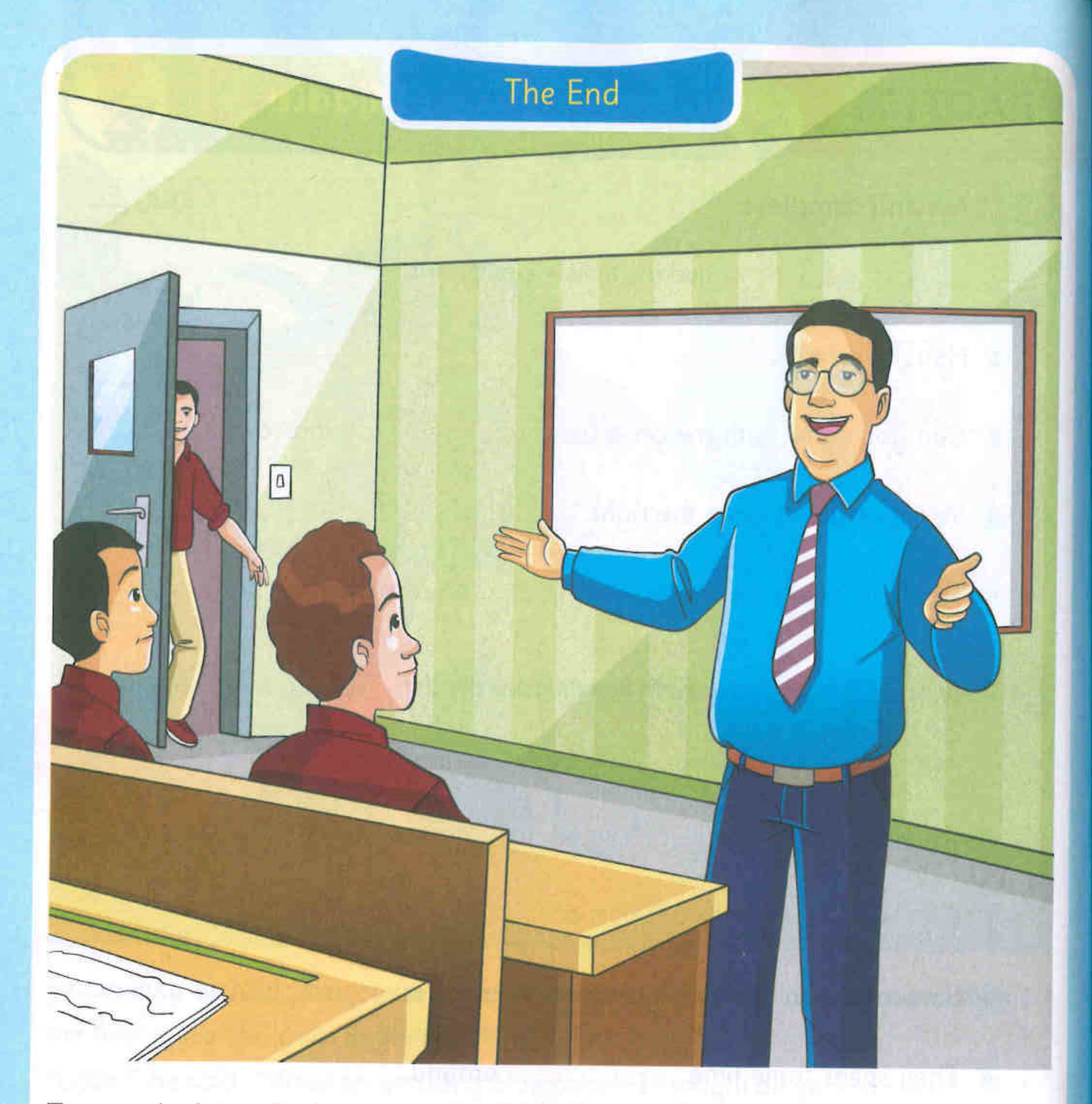
3 Who said the following sentences: من قائل الجمل التالية:

1. 'Like you, Amir, I was interested in reptiles, and now it's my job!' (   )
2. 'I like the tortoises. Do they live a long time?' (   )
3. 'It's important to have the right tools.' (   )
4. 'What an amazing blue color!' (   )

Parents' tips
(1) Help your child listen and complete.
(2) Help your child fill in the gaps.
(3) Help your child read the sentences and write who said them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويكمل.
ساعد طفلك أن يملأ الفراغات.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويكتب قائلها.

The End

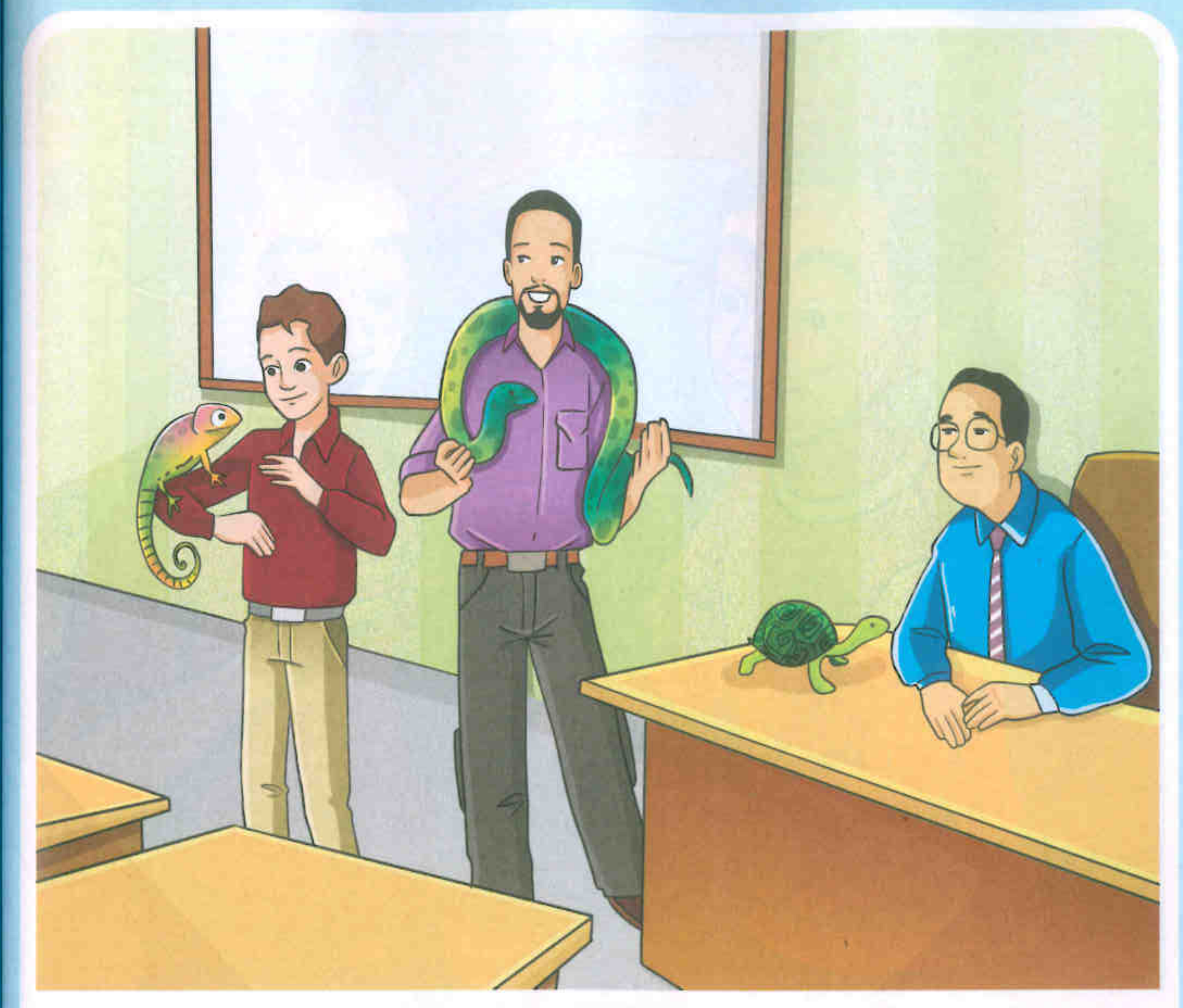


Two weeks later, Amir was at school. Mr Bassam had something important to say: "A special guest is here to give a talk!" Amir loved talks. They were always interesting. "Who is it?" he wondered.

بعد مرور أسبوعين كان أمير فى المدرسة. كان لدى أستاذ بسام شىء مهم عليه قوله: «حضر إلينا ضيف مميز لإلقاء حديث (خطاب). أحب أمير (الخطابات). دائمًا ما تكون مثيرة للاهتمام. تساءل قائلًا : «من هو الضيف؟».

Vocabulary

guest	زائر	talks	خطابات
interesting (adj.)	شيق/ممتع	wonder (v.)	يتساءل



It was a big surprise when Hany walked in! He talked to the boys about his job and protecting the environment. He brought some reptiles for the boys to hold. Of course, he chose Amir to be his helper! All the boys, even Youssef, thought it was really cool.

كانت مفاجأة كبيرة عندما دخل هانى. تحدث مع الأولاد عن وظيفته وعن حماية البيئة. أحضر بعض الزواحف للأولاد ليحملوها. بالطبع لقد اختار هانى ليكون المساعد الخاص به. اعتقد الأولاد بما فيهم يوسف أنها تجربة رائعة.

Vocabulary

protect (v.)	يحمى	environment	البيئة
hold (v.)	يمسك	helper	مساعد



After the lesson, Youssef spoke to Amir.
"I'm sorry, Amir," he said. "Lizzy isn't ugly. I really enjoyed Hany's talk. And now I think reptiles are amazing!"
"That's OK," said Amir. "Oh, I know: why don't you come to my house? You can see Lizzy. You can feed it, too!"
"Awesome! Yes, please!" replied Youssef. "Thank you, Amir!"
The two boys were friends again.

تحدث يوسف إلى أمير بعد الحصة. قال : «أنا آسف يا أمير. ليزى ليست قبيحة. لقد استمتعت حقًا بحديث هانى. والآن، أعتقد أن الزواحف حيوانات رائعة!».
قال أمير: «حسنًا. لماذا لا تأتى إلى منزلى؟يمكنك رؤية ليزى. يمكنك إطعامها أيضًا!».
أجاب يوسف: «رائع ! نعم، من فضلك!» «شكرا لك يا أمير!».
أصبح الولدان أصدقاء مجددًا.

Vocabulary

lesson	حصة	feed (v.)	يطعم
awesome (adj.)	رائع	again	مرة أخرى

1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A
1. The two boys ...
2. Hany chose Amir ...
3. Hany brought some reptiles ...
4. Youssef enjoyed ...

B
( ) Hany's talk.
( ) for the boys to hold.
( ) were friends again.
( ) to be his helper. SB

2 Look, read, and answer: انظر، اقرأ وأجب:

It was a big surprise when Hany walked in! He talked to the boys about his job and protecting the environment. He brought some reptiles for the boys to hold. Of course, he chose Amir to be his helper! All the boys, even Youssef, thought it was really cool.

1. Circle the characters you can see.
   A Mr Bassam B Mariam C Hany D Amir
2. What did Hany bring with him?
   ....
3. Who was Hany's helper?
   ....

3 Read, guess, and write: اقرأ، خمن واكتب:

1. I gave a talk at Amir's school about reptiles. ( )
2. Animals which Hany brought for the boys to hold. ( )
3. Someone who works with reptiles. ( )
4. I was Hany's helper at school. ( )

Parents' tips
(1) Help your child read and match.
(2) Help your child identify the pictures and complete the questions.
(3) Help your child read, guess, and write.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الصور ويجيب عن الأسئلة.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويخمن ويكتب.

Amir wanted to learn more about reptiles and explain more information about them to his friends.



Look and read: انظر واقرأ



The problem المشكلة

What is Amir's problem?

Amir showed his favorite pet poster at school. His poster was about his lizard. His friends laughed and said it was ugly and strange. He was sad.



The process الطريقة

1. **What was Amir's Dad's advice?**

Dad asked Amir to learn more about reptiles and explain to his friends why they are amazing.



2. **What did Amir do?**

Amir looked online and found a reptile club nearby. He sent an email to ask if he could visit the club.



3. **How did Hany help Amir?**

Hany, the herpetologist, showed Amir different types of reptiles. He took Amir with him on a field trip to look for reptiles.

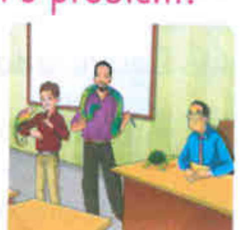




The solution الحل

What did Mr Bassam and Hany do? How did this solve Amir's problem?

Mr Bassam invited Hany to give a talk at Amir's school about reptiles. Hany talked and showed the students different types of reptiles. They thought it was really cool.



الترجمة:

- ماذا تكون مشكلة أمير؟
عرض أمير الملصق الخاص بحيوانه الأليف المفضل في المدرسة. كان ملصقه عن السحلية الخاصة به، سخر أصدقاؤه منه وقالوا عنها قبيحة وغريبة. كان أمير حزينًا.
- ماذا كانت نصيحة والد أمير له؟
نصح الأب أميرًا أن يتعلم المزيد عن الزواحف حتى يتمكن من توضيح أنها حيوانات مدهشة لأصدقائه.
- ماذا فعل أمير؟
بحث أمير على الإنترنت ووجد ناديًا لمحبي أنواع الزواحف بالقرب منه. أرسل بريدًا إلكترونيًا (إيميلًا) ليسأل إذا كان بإمكانه زيارة النادي.
- كيف ساعد هاني أمير؟
عرض هاني إخصائي الزواحف على أمير أنواعًا مختلفة من الزواحف. اصطحب أمير معه في رحلة ميدانية للبحث عن الزواحف.
- ماذا فعل أستاذ بسام وهاني؟ كيف ساعد هذا في حل مشكلة أمير؟
دعا أستاذ بسام هاني ليلقي حديثًا في مدرسة أمير عن الزواحف. تحدث هاني وعرض على الطلاب أنواعًا مختلفة من الزواحف. أعتقد الأولاد أنها تجربة ممتعة.



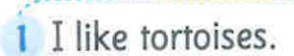
1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

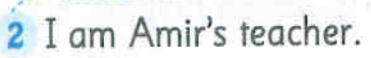


1.  ....
2.  ....
3. ....
4.  ....

2 Read and circle: اقرأ وضع دائرة:

1. I like tortoises.
2. I am Amir's teacher.
3. I am a reptile expert.
4. My favorite pet is lizard.





















3 Tick (True or False): ضع علامة أمام (صح أو خطأ):

	True	False
1. Amir sounded sad at the beginning.	( )	( )
2. Someone who works with reptiles is called a guide.	( )	( )
3. Amir found an amazing blue gecko on a rock.	( )	( )
4. Amir was Hany's helper.	( )	( )

Parents' tips

(1) Help your child write the words.
(2) Help your child read and circle the correct character.
(3) Help your child tick (True) or (False).

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب الكلمات.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع دائرة حول الشخصية الصحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يضع (صح) أو (خطأ).

4 Look, read, and reorder: انظر، اقرأ وأعد الترتيب:


( ) Mr Bassam invited Hany to give a talk at the school.


( ) Amir invited Youssef to his house to see his lizard.


( ) Amir looked online. He found a reptile club nearby.


( ) Dad, Mariam, and Amir went on a field trip with Hany.



5 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Hany is ...	( ) to be his helper.
2 Mr Bassam is ...	( ) to give a talk!
3 A special guest is here ...	( ) a herpetologist.
4 Hany chose Amir ...	( ) Amir's teacher.




6 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة:

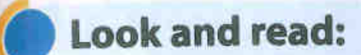
reptiles – strange – dangerous – posters

1 Some of Amir's classmates thought his pet was ....
2 The boys showed their favorite pet ....
3 Hany reminded Amir to be careful because some reptiles are ....
4 Hany brought some .... for the boys to hold.

Parents' tips
(4) Help your child read and reoder the sentences correctly.
(5) Help your child read and match.
(6) Help your child fill in the gaps.

ساعد طفلك يقرأ ويرتب الجمل بطريقة الصحيحة.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل.
ساعد طفلك أن يملأ الفراغات.

Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Amir writes an email to Hany to thank him.

To hany@herpetologist.com
Subject A thank-you message for your help



Dear Hany,
Thank you very much for letting me visit you. I was very excited to meet you and the reptiles. I found a reptile club nearby.
I didn't know that someone who works with reptiles is called a herpetologist.
I really enjoyed watching different reptiles like snakes, lizards, geckos, and tortoises.
Mariam liked the tortoises.
It was fun in the desert near Cairo because we looked for reptiles and I found a gecko on a rock.
I hope I can do a job like yours!
Amir

Send

Read and complete: اقرأ وأكمل:



herpetologist – dangerous – reptiles – trip – lizard

New message

To youssef@student.com
Subject My favorite pet

Dear Youssef,
I am happy to write this email to you. My favorite pet is a .... Its name is Lizzy. I like .... They are amazing. They aren't strange or ugly, but they can be .... I visited a reptile club nearby. I met there a .... He told me a lot about reptiles. He showed us different types of reptiles. We went together into a field .... to look around reptiles. Come to my house tomorrow and see Lizzy, then let me explain to you more about reptiles.
See you soon.
Amir

Send

Parents' tips
Help your child read the mail and complete.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ البريد الإلكتروني (الإيميل) ويكمل.



TEST | Story



Listening

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

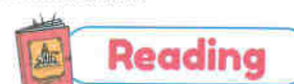
Thank – ugly – house – welcome

Youssef : I'm sorry, Amir. Lizzy isn't ....

Amir : That's OK. Why don't you come to my .... ? You can see Lizzy.

Youssef : Awesome! .... you, Amir!

Amir : You are ....



Reading

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Amir's favorite dish ...	( ) to the reptile club.
2 Hany gave ...	( ) a gecko on a rock.
3 Tortoises can ...	( ) a talk at Amir's school.
4 Amir found ...	( ) live to be 100 years old.
5 Dad drove Amir and Mariam ...	( ) is molokhia and chicken.

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Hany is a (doctor – herpetologist – mechanic).

2 People can have pets like (elephants – hamsters – lions).

3 Reptiles can be (tall – dangerous – ready).

4 Mariam likes (rabbits – geckos – tortoises).

5 Amir is interested in (birds – reptiles – fish).

4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Amir is interested in reptiles. He visited a reptile club to know more information about reptiles. He met Hany - a herpetologist - who explained many things about reptiles to him. He explained how they are an important part of the food chain. Hany asked Amir to go with him on a field trip to look for different reptiles. Amir was excited. He had a lot of fun.

A Tick (True or False):

	True	False
1 Amir visited a sports club.	( )	( )
2 Reptiles are an important part of the food chain.	( )	( )
3 Hany and Amir went on a holiday.	( )	( )

B Answer the following questions:

4 What did Amir visit?

....

5 How did Hany help Amir?

....

Writing

5 Look and write a paragraph of 30 – 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة:

drove – met – herpetologist – job

....

....

....

....

6 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتيـة:

1 what s the matter, Amir

....

2 hany showed Amir snakes lizards, geckos, and tortoises

....

GENERAL PRACTICE



Listening



1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

A

sun – chain – energy – plants

Basma : What does the food .... show, Nancy?
Nancy : It shows how plants and animals get their ....
Basma : How do .... get their energy?
Nancy : They get their energy from the ....

B

ingredients – coconut – basbousa – recipe

Mahmoud : What's your favorite ....?
Hana : My favorite is ....
Mahmoud : What .... do you need to cook it?
Hana : I need the semolina, ..., sugar, and melted butter.

Reading

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A

A	B
1 A: What's your favorite food?	( ) making the air smell cleaner.
2 Libya lies to the west of Egypt,	( ) B: It's chocolate.
3 A: Which sport would you like to try?	( ) and very cold nights.
4 Air freshener is used for ...	( ) B: Squash.
5 The desert has very hot days,	( ) and Sudan lies to the south.

B

A	B
1 "Emission" is ...	( ) particularly from a felucca.
2 I'm very good at swimming, ...	( ) gases from cars or factories.
3 Marwa buys some chickpeas ...	( ) and helps local people.
4 The sunsets are fantastic, ...	( ) to make koshari.
5 Eco-tourism looks after the environment,	( ) but I'm bad at sailing.

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

A

1 My uncle sometimes sells food at the (garden – market – hospital).
2 Chickpeas can keep our (respiratory – solar – digestive) system working properly.
3 I wear (boots – goggles – rackets) when I go swimming.
4 I bought some sunglasses (wear – to wear – wearing) on sunny days.
5 Are there (some – any – a) tomatoes?

B

1 The word (cube – pollute – cry) has 2 syllables.
2 Monkeys are good at (climbs – climb – climbing) trees.
3 Beetles and caterpillars are (tertiary – secondary – primary) consumers.
4 I would like (some – any – a) eggs, please.
5 (Galabeya – Sweater – Scarf) is one of the traditional Egyptian clothes.

OR Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list: اقرأ واملأ الفراغات بكلمات من القائمة:

A

list – shopping – some – sorry – buy

Last week, Hany went shopping with his mom. Mom had mangoes, grapes, and tomatoes on her .... list. She needed to .... bread, too. "Can I have .... oranges, Mom?" asked Hany. Mom said, "No, ... You can't. It's not on our ....".

B

little – healthy – tree – chocolate – unhealthy

Farida likes .... She thinks that it's OK to eat a .... It's .... to eat a lot. Mango is her favorite .... food. She has a mango .... in the garden.



4 Read the passage and then answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

A

My name is Yehia. Last weekend at school, we learned about climate change. We learned that people are causing climate change because we produce too many greenhouse gases and the Earth is getting warmer. Climate change is happening faster and faster in the last 20 years. Climate change makes the plants die, sea levels rise, and not have enough rain, and the crops die.

A Tick (True or False): True False

1. Yesterday, they learned about climate change. ( ) ( )
2. Animals are causing the climate change. ( ) ( )
3. We produce too many greenhouse gases. ( ) ( )

B Answer the following questions:

4. How are people causing climate change?

....

5. What does the climate change do?

....



B

The food chain shows how plants and animals get their energy. At the start of the chain, we can see plants. They get energy from the sun. That's why they are called producers. Animals eat plants or other animals for energy. That's why they are called consumers. Primary consumers eat plants. Secondary consumers eat small animals and insects. Tertiary consumers eat larger animals.

A Tick (True or False):





1. The food chain shows healthy food. ( ) ( )
2. Animals get energy from the sun. ( ) ( )
3. Secondary consumers eat small animals. ( ) ( )



B Answer the following questions:

4. Why are plants called producers?

....

5. What do consumers eat?

....





5 Read and re-arrange to make correct sentences: اقرأ وأعد الترتيب لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

A

1. consumers – plants – Primary – eat.

....

2. look – our planet – We – to – need – after.

....

3. she – her – Will – sneakers – need?

....

4. Egypt – does – help – How – tourism?

....

5. mustn't – grass – on – the – walk – You.

....

B

1. do – How – they – tennis – often – play?

....

2. mangoes – grow – garden – We – our – in.

....

3. reading – at – I'm – Arabic – good.

....

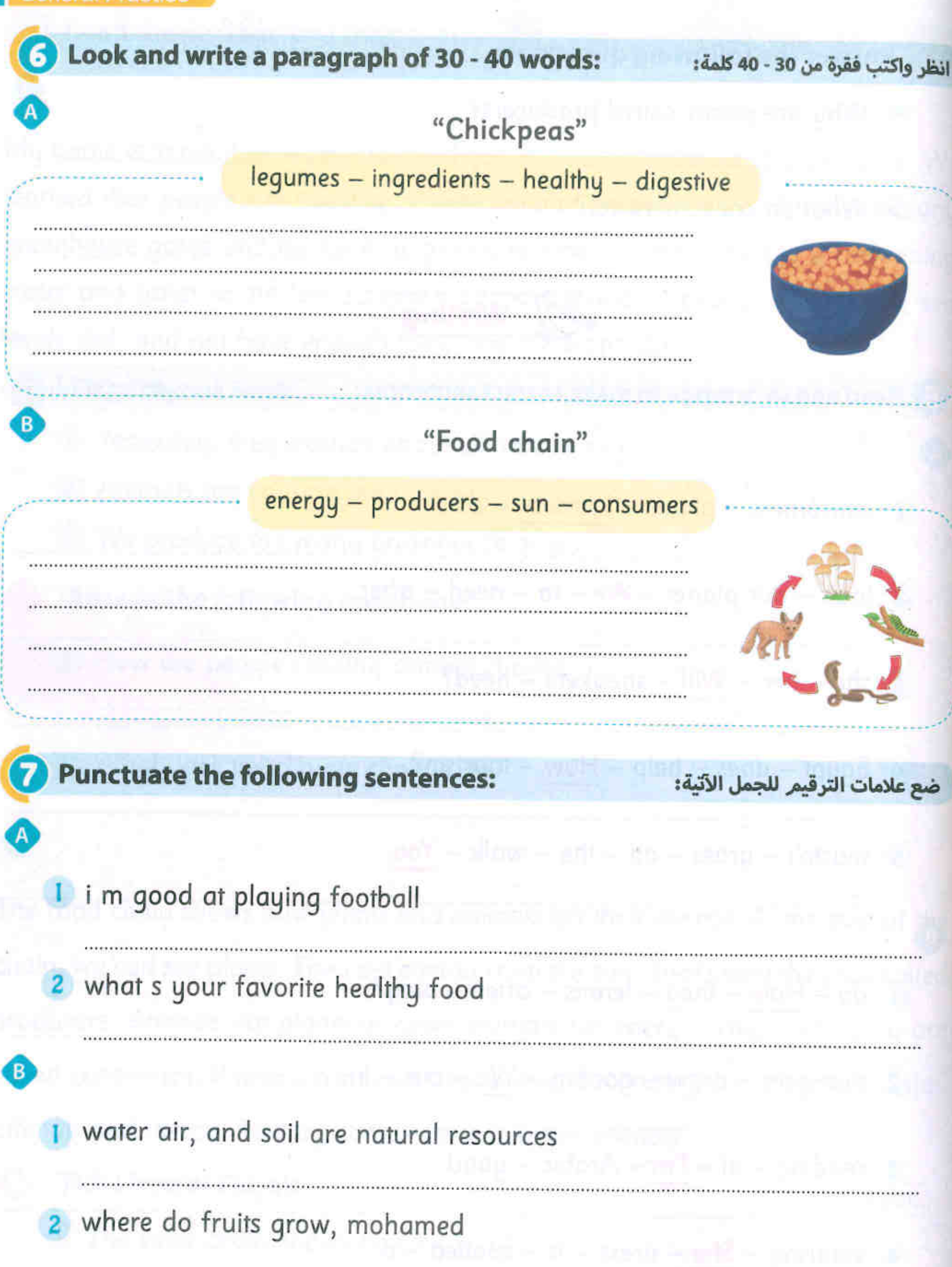
4. wearing – She – dress – is – spotted – a.

....

5. a modern – lower – Cairo – city – is – in – Egypt.

....

6 Look and write a paragraph of 30 - 40 words: انظر واكتب فقرة من 30 - 40 كلمة:



A "Chickpeas"

legumes – ingredients – healthy – digestive

....

....

....

....

B "Food chain"

energy – producers – sun – consumers

....

....

....

....

7 Punctuate the following sentences: ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية:

A

1. i m good at playing football

....

2. what s your favorite healthy food

....

B

1. water air, and soil are natural resources

....

2. where do fruits grow, mohamed

....

Tape Scripts

Unit 1 We plant our food

Practice on Lesson 1

1. 1 pineapples 2 coconuts 3 carrots 4 lemons

Test Yourself on Lesson 1

1.
Farida : What's your favorite food, Nada?
Nada : Oh! That's easy. It's chocolate.
Farida : I like chocolate too, but I think it's unhealthy, isn't it?
Nada : Yes, but it's OK if you eat a little.

Test Yourself on Lesson 2

1.
Habiba : What does the food chain show, Huda?
Huda : It shows how plants and animals get their energy.
Habiba : How do plants get their energy?
Huda : Plants are producers. They get their energy from the sun.

Test Yourself on Lesson 3

1.
Adel : What would you like to drink, Samir?
Samir : I'd like some orange juice, please.
Adel : Can I have some coffee, please?
Samir : Yes, sure.

Lesson 4B: Checkpoint

1 cake 2 rice 3 bean

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

1. 1 lime 2 meat 3 cake 4 rice

Al-Adwaa Test 1

1.
Lama : What are you growing in your garden, Walaa?
Walaa : We are growing lime and mango trees.
Lama : Are there any lemon trees?
Walaa : No, there aren't any.

Al-Adwaa Test 2

1.
Sally : What are you reading, Soha?
Soha : I am reading "Jack and the Beanstalk". It's my favorite story.
Sally : Can I borrow it when you finish it?
Soha : Yes, of course.

Unit 2 I want to be healthy!

Test Yourself on Lesson 1

1.
A : What sport are you good at?
B : I'm very good at playing tennis.
A : What other sports do you watch on TV?
B : I love watching karate and kung fu.

Test Yourself on Lesson 2

1.
A : Why are you good at table tennis?
B : Because I can move fast.
A : What sport are you bad at?
B : I'm bad at handball.

Lesson Checkpoint 3B

1 cup (3 sounds) 2 sit (3 sounds)
3 egg (2 sounds)

Test Yourself on Lesson 3

1. 1 window (2 syllables) 2 robot (2 syllables)
3 man (one syllable) 4 hotel (2 syllables)

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

1.
Sara : How can air pollution affect our health?
Hany : Emissions from cars and factories can be dangerous for our lungs.
Sara : How can we look after our planet?
Hany : We should use our cars less and use our bikes more.

Al-Adwaa Test 1

1.
A : What sport are you good at?
B : I am good at playing tennis.
A : Where do you often play?
B : I play it in the tennis court.

Al-Adwaa Test 2

1.
A : What are you watching?
B : An old squash match.
A : Who's winning?
B : Raneem El Weleily. She's very good at playing squash.

Unit 3 How do I look?

Test Yourself on Lesson 1

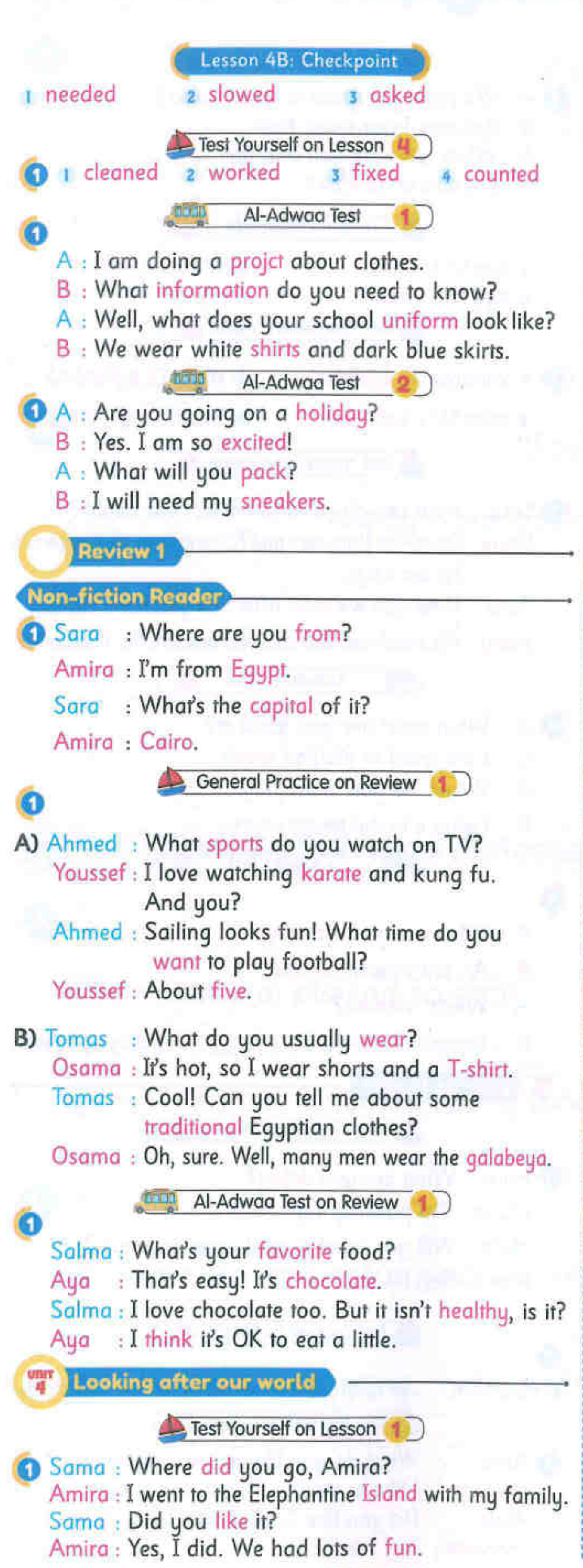
1.
Hala : What are you doing?
Mona : I'm packing my suitcase.
Hala : Will you need to pack your pajamas?
Mona : Yes, I will.

Test Yourself on Lesson 2

1. 1 mountain 2 rainforest 3 waterfalls 4 glacier

Test Yourself on Lesson 3

1.
Alaa : What do you like to wear in summer?
Marwan : I like to wear a T-shirt and shorts.
Alaa : Do you like T-shirts with long sleeves?
Marwan : No, I don't.



Lesson 4B: Checkpoint

1 needed 2 slowed 3 asked

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

1 1 cleaned 2 worked 3 fixed 4 counted

Al-Adwaa Test 1

1
A : I am doing a projct about clothes.
B : What information do you need to know?
A : Well, what does your school uniform look like?
B : We wear white shirts and dark blue skirts.

Al-Adwaa Test 2

1 A : Are you going on a holiday?
B : Yes. I am so excited!
A : What will you pack?
B : I will need my sneakers.

Review 1

Non-fiction Reader

1 Sara : Where are you from?
Amira : I'm from Egypt.
Sara : What's the capital of it?
Amira : Cairo.

General Practice on Review 1

1
A) Ahmed : What sports do you watch on TV?
Youssef : I love watching karate and kung fu. And you?
Ahmed : Sailing looks fun! What time do you want to play football?
Youssef : About five.

B) Tomas : What do you usually wear?
Osama : It's hot, so I wear shorts and a T-shirt.
Tomas : Cool! Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes?
Osama : Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya.

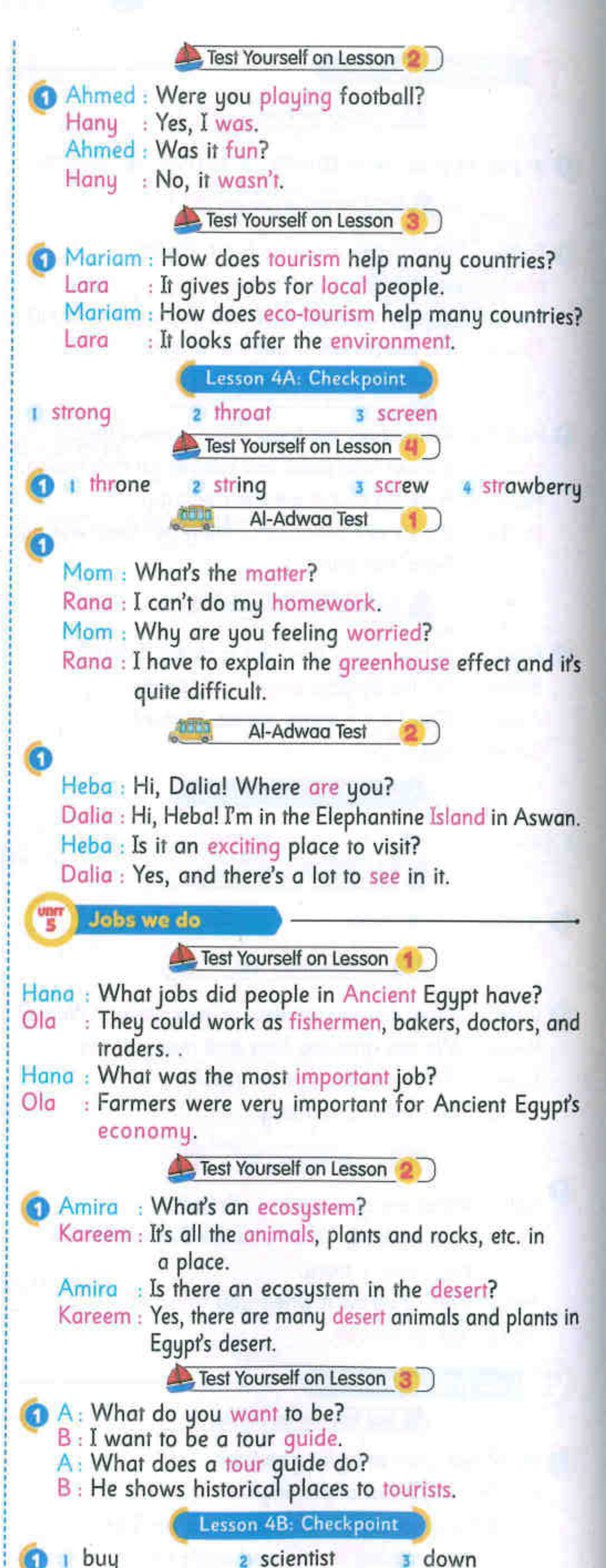
Al-Adwaa Test on Review 1

1
Salma : What's your favorite food?
Aya : That's easy! It's chocolate.
Salma : I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it?
Aya : I think it's OK to eat a little.

Unit 4 Looking after our world

Test Yourself on Lesson 1

1 Sama : Where did you go, Amira?
Amira : I went to the Elephantine Island with my family.
Sama : Did you like it?
Amira : Yes, I did. We had lots of fun.



Test Yourself on Lesson 2

1 Ahmed : Were you playing football?
Hany : Yes, I was.
Ahmed : Was it fun?
Hany : No, it wasn't.

Test Yourself on Lesson 3

1 Mariam : How does tourism help many countries?
Lara : It gives jobs for local people.
Mariam : How does eco-tourism help many countries?
Lara : It looks after the environment.

Lesson 4A: Checkpoint

1 strong 2 throat 3 screen

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

1 1 throne 2 string 3 screw 4 strawberry

Al-Adwaa Test 1

1
Mom : What's the matter?
Rana : I can't do my homework.
Mom : Why are you feeling worried?
Rana : I have to explain the greenhouse effect and it's quite difficult.

Al-Adwaa Test 2

1
Heba : Hi, Dalia! Where are you?
Dalia : Hi, Heba! I'm in the Elephantine Island in Aswan.
Heba : Is it an exciting place to visit?
Dalia : Yes, and there's a lot to see in it.

Unit 5 Jobs we do

Test Yourself on Lesson 1

Hana : What jobs did people in Ancient Egypt have?
Ola : They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. .
Hana : What was the most important job?
Ola : Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt's economy.

Test Yourself on Lesson 2

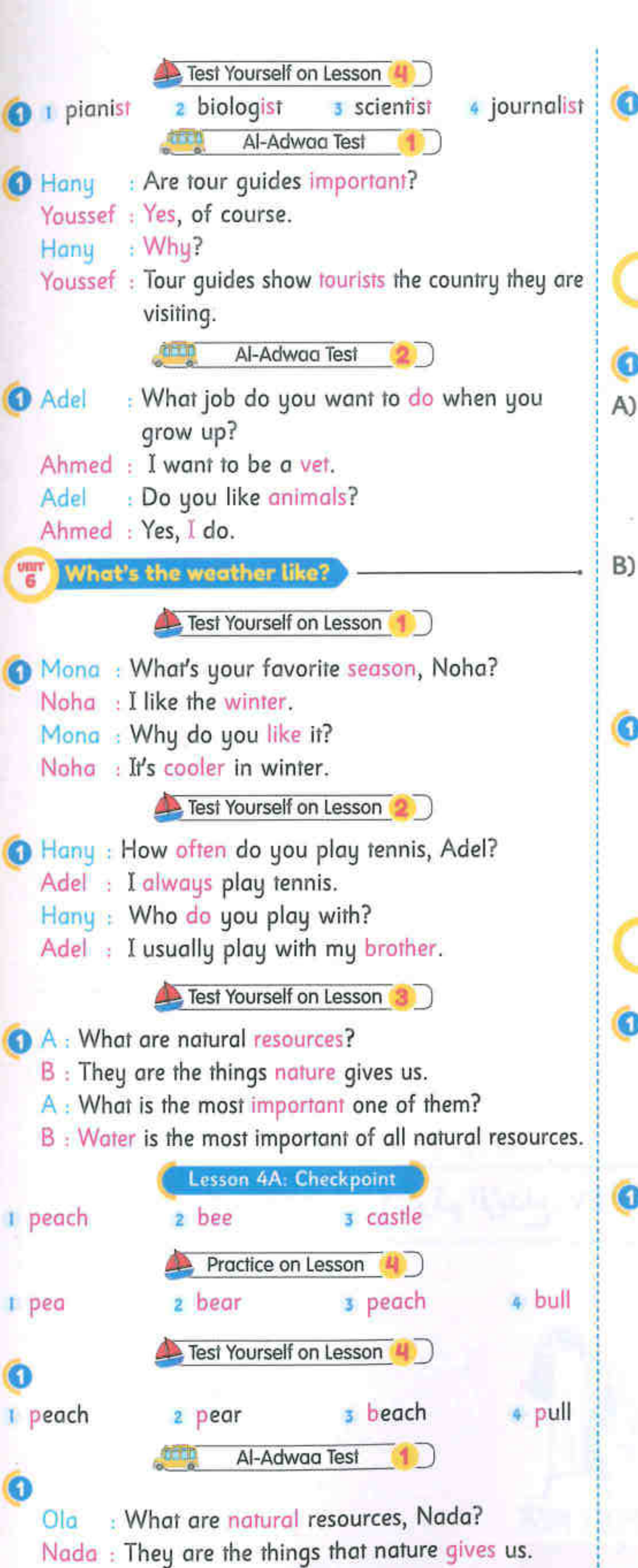
1 Amira : What's an ecosystem?
Kareem : It's all the animals, plants and rocks, etc. in a place.
Amira : Is there an ecosystem in the desert?
Kareem : Yes, there are many desert animals and plants in Egypt's desert.

Test Yourself on Lesson 3

1 A : What do you want to be?
B : I want to be a tour guide.
A : What does a tour guide do?
B : He shows historical places to tourists.

Lesson 4B: Checkpoint

1 1 buy 2 scientist 3 down



Test Yourself on Lesson 4

1 1 pianist 2 biologist 3 scientist 4 journalist

Al-Adwaa Test 1

1 Hany : Are tour guides important?
Youssef : Yes, of course.
Hany : Why?
Youssef : Tour guides show tourists the country they are visiting.

Al-Adwaa Test 2

1 Adel : What job do you want to do when you grow up?
Ahmed : I want to be a vet.
Adel : Do you like animals?
Ahmed : Yes, I do.

Unit 6 What's the weather like?

Test Yourself on Lesson 1

1 Mona : What's your favorite season, Noha?
Noha : I like the winter.
Mona : Why do you like it?
Noha : It's cooler in winter.

Test Yourself on Lesson 2

1 Hany : How often do you play tennis, Adel?
Adel : I always play tennis.
Hany : Who do you play with?
Adel : I usually play with my brother.

Test Yourself on Lesson 3

1 A : What are natural resources?
B : They are the things nature gives us.
A : What is the most important one of them?
B : Water is the most important of all natural resources.

Lesson 4A: Checkpoint

1 peach 2 bee 3 castle

Practice on Lesson 4

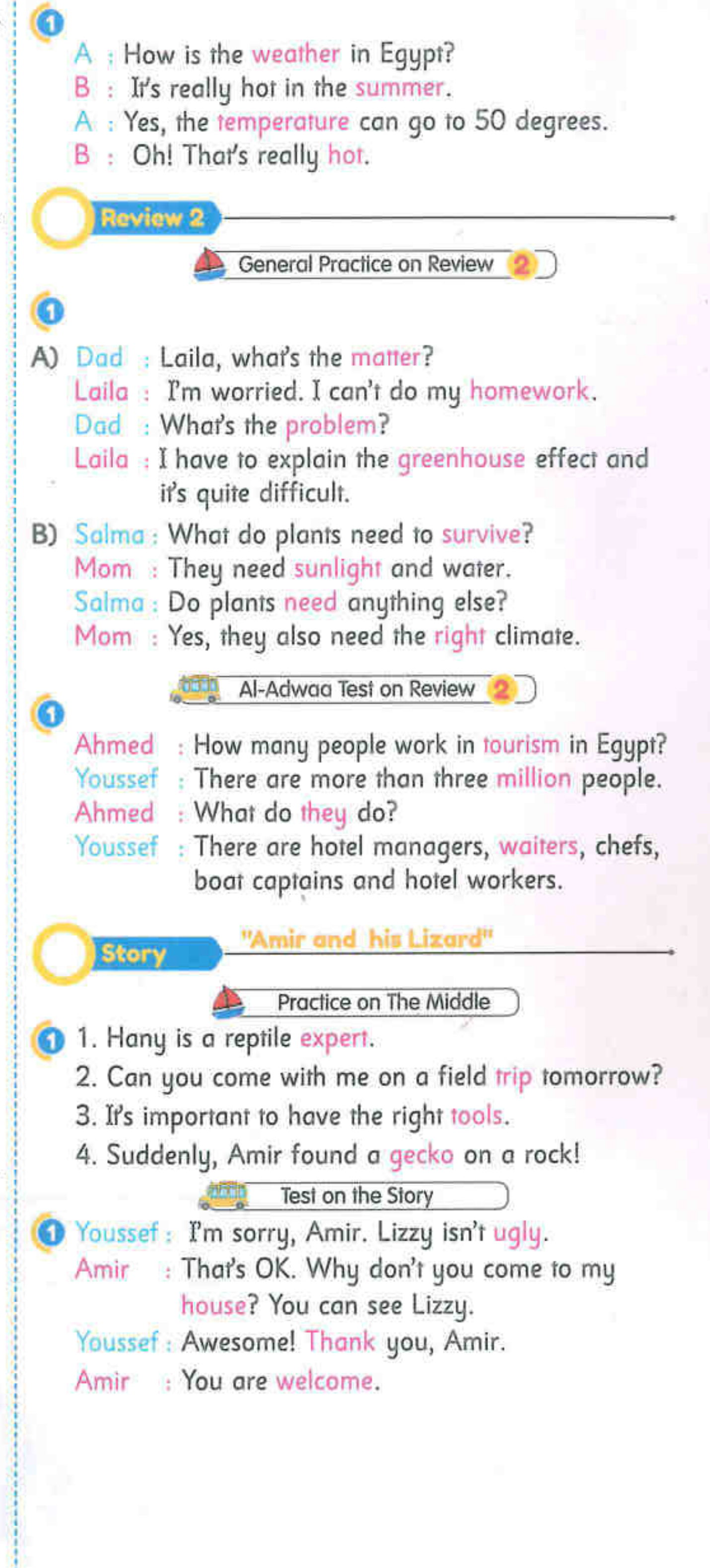
1 pea 2 bear 3 peach 4 bull

Test Yourself on Lesson 4

1
1 peach 2 pear 3 beach 4 pull

Al-Adwaa Test 1

1
Ola : What are natural resources, Nada?
Nada : They are the things that nature gives us.
Ola : Are they important?
Nada : Yes, we use them to stay alive and keep healthy.



Al-Adwaa Test 2

1
A : How is the weather in Egypt?
B : It's really hot in the summer.
A : Yes, the temperature can go to 50 degrees.
B : Oh! That's really hot.

Review 2

General Practice on Review 2

1
A) Dad : Laila, what's the matter?
Laila : I'm worried. I can't do my homework.
Dad : What's the problem?
Laila : I have to explain the greenhouse effect and it's quite difficult.

B) Salma : What do plants need to survive?
Mom : They need sunlight and water.
Salma : Do plants need anything else?
Mom : Yes, they also need the right climate.

Al-Adwaa Test on Review 2

1
Ahmed : How many people work in tourism in Egypt?
Youssef : There are more than three million people.
Ahmed : What do they do?
Youssef : There are hotel managers, waiters, chefs, boat captains and hotel workers.

Story "Amir and his Lizard"

Practice on The Middle

1 1. Hany is a reptile expert.
2. Can you come with me on a field trip tomorrow?
3. It's important to have the right tools.
4. Suddenly, Amir found a gecko on a rock!

Test on the Story

1 Youssef : I'm sorry, Amir. Lizzy isn't ugly.
Amir : That's OK. Why don't you come to my house? You can see Lizzy.
Youssef : Awesome! Thank you, Amir.
Amir : You are welcome.